

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES • VOLUME 2

POOR HEINRICH AND FARMER HELMBRECHT

Der arme Heinrich
Meier Helmbrecht
Moriz von Craûn
Daz Herzemære

*Poor Heinrich and Farmer Helmbrecht
with Moriz of Craon and the Tale of the Heart*

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation
preserving the original word order

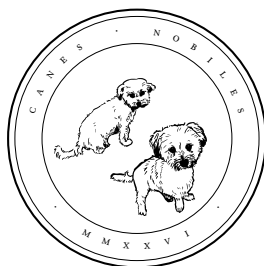


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 2 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows *Der arme Heinrich*, herausgegeben von Hermann Paul, *Altdeutsche Textbibliothek 3* (Halle: Max Niemeyer, 1882); *Erzählungen und Schwänke*, herausgegeben von Hans Lambel, *Deutsche Classiker des Mittelalters 12*, zweite Auflage (Leipzig: F. A. Brockhaus, 1883); *Zwei altdeutsche Rittermären*, herausgegeben von Edward Schröder (Berlin: Weidmann, 1894)

Set from page scans of those printings

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Paul, Lambel, and Schröder number them, every fifth verse in the outer margin; the ten verses Paul prints and does not count stand under a lettered number and carry no figure in the margin. The circumflex and the quotation marks are each editor's own, and the acute Lambel sets over a vowel to mark the metrical beat is not reproduced. A word in angle brackets is one Schröder supplies, and *** marks words the manuscript has lost.

CONTENTS

HARTMANN VON AUE · DER ARME HEINRICH

I · Hartmann of Aue, and the Knight Who Had Everything	9
II · Montpellier and Salerno	20
III · The Farmer's Household	31
IV · The Child Offers Her Life	41
V · What the Maiden Answers Her Parents	51
VI · They Consent, and the Road to Salerno	63
VII · The Physician Puts Her to the Test	74
VIII · Heinrich Looks Through the Wall	85
IX · The Healing, and the Wedding	95

WERNHER DER GARTENÆRE · MEIER HELMBREHT

I · The Cap, and the Boy Who Wore It	109
II · His Clothes, and the Horse He Asks For	120
III · The Father's Counsel and the Son's Answer	132
IV · The Four Dreams	143

WERNHER DER GARTENÆRE · MEIER HELMBREHT

(continued)

V · Helmbreht Comes Home	153
VI · Court as It Was, and Court as It Is	167
VII · His Companions, and Their Names	178
VIII · Gotelint Is Given to Lemberslint	190
IX · The Wedding, and the Bailiff	202
X · The Judgment	214
XI · The Peasants Take Him	224

ANONYMOUS · MORIZ VON CRAÛN

I · How Knighthood Came from Troy to Greece and Rome	235
II · Knighthood Comes to France, and the Knight of Craon	249
III · His Complaint, and What the Countess Answers	261
IV · The Ship That Sailed on Dry Land	272
V · The Tournament Before the Castle	285
VI · He Gives Away Everything, and Is Sent For	296
VII · He Falls Asleep in the Maiden's Lap	309
VIII · The Count Wakes	321
IX · He Takes Back the Ring	334

KONRAD VON WÜRZBURG · DAZ HERZEMÆRE

I · The Prologue, and the Parting	351
II · The Knight Dies Overseas	364
III · The Heart at Table	376

HARTMANN VON AUE

Der arme Heinrich

Poor Heinrich

Hartmann of Aue, and the Knight Who Had Everything

I

Hartmann names himself: a knight of Aue, lettered enough to read, who looked in books for something to ease a heavy hour and turn to God's honor. His tale is of a lord in Swabia lacking no knightly virtue, rich in birth and richer in honor. Then, as with Absalom, the crown of worldly sweetness falls under his feet: leprosy takes him, and the man everyone had looked at gladly becomes one nobody will look at. Job bore as much and praised God; Heinrich rides to Montpellier, and is told he will never be freed.

Ein ritter sô gelêret was

A knight so learned was

daz er an den buochen las

that he in the books read

swaz er dar an geschriben vant.

whatever he there in written found.

der was Hartman genant,

he was Hartman named,

dienstman was er ze Ouwe.

liegeman was he at Aue.

er nam im mange schouwe

he took for-himself many-a viewing

an mislîchen buochen:

in various books:

dar an begunde er suochen

there in began he to-seek

ob er iht des funde

whether he anything of-it might-find

dâ mite er swære stunde

there with he heavy hours

möhte senfter machen,

might gentler make,

5

10

und von sô gewanten sachen
and of so constituted matters

daz gotes êren töhte
that of-God for-honor might-avail

und dâ mite er sich möhte
and there with he himself might

15 gelieben den liuten.
endear to-the people.

nu beginnet er iu diuten
now begins he to-you to-expound

ein rede die er geschriben vant.
an account which he written found.

dar umbe hât er sich genant,
there for has he himself named,

daz er sîner arbeit
that he of-his hardship

20 die er dar an hât geleit
which he there on has laid

iht âne lôn belîbe,
not-at-all without reward might-remain,

und swer nâch sînem lîbe
and whoever after his life

sî hoere sagen oder lese,
it hears to-be-told or reads,

daz er im bittende wese
that he for-him praying may-be

25 der sêle heiles hin ze gote.
of-the soul of-salvation forth to God.

man seit, er sî sîn selbes bote
one says, he be his own messenger

unde erlœse sich dâ mite,
and redeem himself there with,

swer über des andern schulde bite.
whoever over the other's guilt prays.

- Er las ditze mære,
He read this tale,
- wie ein herre wære 30
how a lord were
- ze Swâben gesezzen:
in Swabia settled:
- an dem enwas vergezzen
in whom was forgotten
- deheiner der tugende
none of-the virtues
- die ein ritter in sîner jugende
which a knight in his youth
- ze vollem lobe haben sol. 35
to full praise have should.
- man sprach dô niemen alsô wol
one spoke then of-no-one so well
- in allen den landen.
in all the lands.
- er hete ze sînen handen
he had at his hands
- geburt und dar zuo rîcheit:
birth and there to wealth:
- ouch was sîn tugent vil breit. 40
also was his virtue very broad.
- swie ganz sîn habe wære,
however whole his property were,
- sîn geburt unwandelbære
his birth unblemished
- und wol den fürsten gelîch,
and well to-the princes equal,

doch was er unnâch alsô rîch

yet was he not-nearly so rich

45 der gebürte und des guotes

in-the birth and in-the goods

sô der êren und des muotes.

as in-the honors and in-the spirit.

Sîn name der was erkennelich,

His name it was well-known,

und hiez der herre Heinrich,

and was-called the lord Heinrich,

und was von Ouwe geborn.

and was of Aue born.

50 sîn herze hâte versworn

his heart had forsworn

valsch und alle törperheit,

falsehood and all boorishness,

und behielt ouch vaste den eit

and kept also firmly the oath

stæte unz an sîn ende.

constantly until to his end.

ân alle missewende

without all fault

55 stuont sîn êre und sîn leben.

stood his honor and his life.

im was der rehte wunsch gegeben

to-him was the true wish given

ze werltlîchen êren:

to worldly honors:

die kunde er wol gemêren

them could he well increase

mit aller hande reiner tugent.

with every kind of-pure virtue.

60 er was ein bluome der jugent,

he was a flower of-the youth,

der werlte fröude ein spiegelglas.

the world's joy a mirror.

stæter triuwe ein adamas,

of-constant faithfulness a diamond,

ein ganziu krône der zuht.

a whole crown of breeding.

er was der nôthaften fluht,

he was of-the needy refuge,

ein schilt sîner mâge,

a shield of-his kinsmen,

der milte ein glîchiu wâge:

of generosity an even scale:

im enwart über noch gebrast.

to-him neither-was over-much nor was-lacking.

er truoc den arbeitsamen last

he bore the toilsome burden

der êren über rücke.

of-the honors over (his)-back.

er was des râtes brücke,

he was the counsel's bridge,

und sanc vil wol von minnen.

and sang very well of love.

alsus kund er gewinnen

thus could he win

der werlte lop unde prîs.

the world's praise and renown.

ez was hübesch und dar zuo wîs.

it was courtly and there to wise.

65

70

- 75 Dô der herre Heinrich
 When the lord Heinrich
- alsô geniete sich
 thus sated himself
- êren unde guotes
 of-honors and of-goods
- und frœlîches muotes
 and of-joyful spirit
- und werltlîcher wünne
 and of-worldly delight
- 80 (er was für al sîn künne
 (he was above all his kindred
- geprîset unde geêret),
 praised and honored),
- sîn hôher muot wart verkêret
 his high spirit was turned
- in ein leben gar geneiget.
 into a life quite bowed-down.
- an im wart erzeiget,
 in him was shown,
- 85 als ouch an Absolône,
 as also in Absalom,
- daz diu üppige krône
 that the vain crown
- werltlîcher süeze
 of-worldly sweetness
- vellet under füeze
 falls under feet
- ab ir besten werdekeit,
 from its highest worth,
- 90 als uns diu schrift hât geseit.
 as to-us the scripture has said.
- ez spricht an einer stete dâ,
 it speaks in a place there,

‘mêdiâ vîtâ

‘in-the-midst of-life

in morte sûmus.’

in death we-are:’

daz bediutet sich alsus,

that signifies itself thus,

daz wir in dem tôde sweben

that we in the death hover

95

sô wir aller beste wænen leben.

when we of-all best suppose to-live.

Dirre werlte veste,

Of-this world’s firmness,

ir stæte, unde ir beste

its constancy, and its best

unde ir gröeste magenkraft,

and its greatest might,

diu stât âne meisterschaft.

it stands without mastery.

100

des muge wir an der kerzen sehen

of-that may we in the candle see

ein wârez bilde geschehen,

a true image happen,

daz sî zeiner aschen wirt

that it to-an ash becomes

enmitten dô sî licht birt.

in-the-midst when it light bears.

wir sîn von bröeden sachen.

we are of frail matters.

105

nû sehent wie unser lachen

now see how our laughter

mit weinen erlischet.

with weeping is-quenched.

unser sūeze ist vermischet

our sweetness is mixed

mit bitterre gallē.

with bitter gall.

110 unser bluome der muoz vallen

our flower it must fall

so er allergrūenest wānet sîn.

when it greenest-of-all thinks to-be.

an hern Heinrîche wart wol schîn,

in lord Heinrich became well plain,

der in dem hœhsten werde

who in the highest worth

lebet ûf dirre erde,

lives on this earth,

115 derst der versmæhete vor gote.

he-is the despised-one before God.

er viel von sîme gebote

he fell by his command

ab sîner besten werdekeit

from his highest worth

in ein versmæhelîchez leit:

into a contemptible grief:

in ergreif diu miselsuht.

him seized the leprosy.

120 dô man die swæren gotes zuht

when one the heavy God's discipline

gesach an sînem lîbe,

saw on his body,

manne unde wîbe

to-man and to-woman

wart er dô widerzæme.

became he then repugnant.

nû sehent wie genæme

now see how agreeable

er ê der werlte wære,

he before to-the world were,

und wart nû also unmære

and became now so unregarded

daz in niemen gerne an sach:

that him no-one gladly at looked:

also ouch Jôbe geschach,

as also to-Job happened,

dem edeln und dem rîchen,

to-the noble and to-the rich,

der ouch vil jæmerlîchen

who also very piteously

dem miste wart ze teile

to-the dunghill was as portion

mitten in sîme heile.

in-the-midst in his prosperity.

Und dô der arme Heinrich

And when the poor Heinrich

alrêst verstuont sich

first understood himself

daz er der werlte widerstuont,

that he to-the world was-repugnant,

als alle sîne gelîchen tuont,

as all his like do,

dô schiet in sîn bitter leit

then separated him his bitter grief

von Jôbes gedultikeit.

from Job's patience.

wan ez leit Jôb der guote

for it bore Job the good

mit gedultigem muote,

with patient spirit,

125

130

135

140

do ez ime ze lidenne geschach,
when it to-him for suffering befell,

durch der sêle gemach.
for the soul's ease.

den siechtuom und die smâcheit
the sickness and the humiliation

die er von der werlte leit,
which he from the world suffered,

145 des lobet er got und fröute sich.
for-that praised he God and rejoiced himself.

dô tet der arme Heinrich
then did the poor Heinrich

leider niender alsô:
alas in-no-way so:

wan er was trûrec unde unfrô.
for he was sorrowful and joyless.

sîn swebendez herze daz verswanc,
his soaring heart it sank,

150 sîn schwimmendiû fröude ertranc,
his swimming joy drowned,

sîn hôchvart muoste vallen,
his pride bad-to fall,

sîn honic wart ze gallen,
his honey turned to gall,

ein swinde vinster donreslac
a swift dark thunderclap

zerbrach im sînen mitten tac,
shattered for-him his mid day,

155 ein trûebez wolken unde dic
a murky cloud and thick

bedaht im sîner sunnen blic.
covered for-him his sun's gleam.

er sente sich vil sêre

he grieved himself very sorely

daz er sô manege êre

that he so many honors

hinder im müeste lâzen.

behind him had-to leave.

verfluochet und verwâzen

cursed and accursed

160

wart vil ofte der tac

was very often the day

dâ sîn geburt ane lac.

where his birth upon lay.

Ein wênic fröuwet er sich doch

A little rejoices he himself yet

von eime trôste dennoch:

from a comfort still:

wan im wart dicke geseit

for to-him was often said

165

daz disiu selbe siecheit

that this same sickness

wære vil mislich

were very various

und etelichiu gnislich.

and some curable.

des wart vil maneger slahte

of-that became very of-many kinds

sîn gedinge und sîn ahte.

his expectation and his thought.

170

er gedâhte daz er wære

he thought that he were

vil lihte genisbære,

very likely curable,

und fuor alsô drâte

and fared thus swiftly

nâch der arzâte râte

after the physicians' counsel

175 gegen Munpasiliere.

toward Montpellier.

dâ vand er vil schiere

there found he very quickly

niht wan den untrôst

nothing but the discouragement

daz er niemer würde erlöst.

that he never would-be freed.

Montpellier and Salerno

II

At Salerno the best master tells him the strange thing: he is curable and will stay uncured, because the medicine is the heart's blood of an honorable maiden willing to die for him, and nobody can buy that. Heinrich gives his goods to poor kinsmen, strangers, and God's houses, and withdraws to a clearing held by a free husbandman, his steward, who bears the burden gladly. The peasant's daughter never leaves his feet; he buys her a mirror, a hair-band, a girdle, and a ring and calls her his betrothed, though a sweet spirit of God's giving endears him to her more.

Daz hôte er vil ungerne,

That heard he very unwillingly,

180 und fuor gegen Sâlerne

and fared toward Salerno

und suochte ouch dâ durch genist

and sought also there for cure

der wîsen arzâte list.

the wise physicians' art.

den besten meister er dâ vant.

the best master he there found.

der seite ime zehant

he told to-him at-once

ein seltsæne mære,

a strange tale,

185

daz er genislich wære

that he curable were

und wære doch iemer ungenesen.

and were yet ever uncured.

dô sprach er 'wie mac daz wesen?

then said he 'how can that be?

diu rede ist harte unmügelich.

the speech is very impossible.

bin ich gnislich, sô genise ich:

(if)-am I curable, then recover I:

190

und swaz mir für wirt geleit

and whatever to-me before is laid

von guote oder von arbeit,

of goods or of toil,

daz trûwe ich vollebringen.'

that trust I to-accomplish.'

'nû lât daz gedingen'

'now leave that expecting'

sprach der meister aber dô:

said the master again then:

195

'iuwerre sühte ist alsô

'of-your disease (it)-is so

(waz frumet daz ichz iu kunt tuo?):

(what avails that I-it to-you known make?):

dâ hœret arzenîe zuo:

there belongs medicine to:

des wæret ir genislich.

of-it were you curable.

- 200 nu enist ab nieman sô rîch
now is but no-one so rich
 noch von sô starken sinnen
nor of so strong senses
 der sî mûge gewinnen.
who it might obtain.
 des sint ir iemer ungenesen,
of-that are you ever uncured,
 got enwelle der arzât wesen.'
God unless-wills the physician to-be.'
- 205 Dô sprach der arme Heinrich
Then said the poor Heinrich
 'war umbe untrœstent ir mich?
'where for discourage you me?
 jâ hân ich guotes wol die kraft:
indeed have I of-goods well the power:
 ir enwellent iuwer meisterschaft
you unless-will your mastery
 und iuwer reht ouch brechen
and your law also to-break
- 210 und dar zuo versprechen
and there to to-refuse
 beidiu mîn silber und mîn golt,
both my silver and my gold,
 ich mache iuch mir alsô holt
I make you to-me so favorable
 daz ir mich harte gerne ernert.'
that you me very gladly heal.'
 'mir wære der wille unrewert'
'to-me were the will unrefused'
- 215 sprach der meister aber dô:
said the master again then:

‘und wære der arzenîe alsô

‘and were-(it) of-the medicine so

daz man sî veile funde

that one it for-sale might-find

oder daz man sî kunde

or that one it could

mit deheinen dingen erwerben,

with any things acquire,

ich enlieze iuch niht verderben.

I would-let you not perish.

nu enmac des leider niht sîn:

now can of-it alas not be:

dâ von muoz iu diu helfe mîn

there for must to-you the help my

durch alle nôt sîn versaget.

through all distress be denied.

ir müesent haben eine maget

you must have a maiden

diu vollen êrbære

who fully honorable

und ouch des willen wære

and also of-the will were

daz sî den tôt durch iuch lite.

that she the death for you should-suffer.

nu enist ez niht der liute site

now is it not the people’s custom

daz ez iemen gerne tuo.

that it anyone gladly does.

sô hoert ouch anders niht dar zuo

so belongs also otherwise nothing there to

niwan der megede herzen bluot:

except the maiden’s heart’s blood:

daz wære für iuwer suht guot.’

that were for your disease good.’

220

225

230

Nu erkante der arme Heinrich

Now knew the poor Heinrich

daz daz wære unmügelich

that that were impossible

235 daz iemen den erwürbe

that anyone the-one might-win

der gerne für in stürbe.

who gladly for him would-die.

alsus was im der trôst benomen

thus was from-him the comfort taken

ûf den er dar was komen,

upon which he thither was come,

und dar nâch für die selben frist

and there after for the same time

240 hât er ze sîner genist

has he for his cure

dehein gedinge mêre.

no expectation more.

des wart sîn herzesêre

of-that became his heart's-grief

alsô kreftic unde grôz

so strong and great

daz in des aller meist verdrôz,

that him of-it all most irked,

245 ob er langer solte leben.

whether he longer should live.

nû fuor er heim und begunde geben

now fared he home and began to-give

sîn erbe und ouch sîn varnde guot,

his inheritance and also his movable goods,

als in dô sîn selbes muot

as him then his own spirit

und wîser rât lêrte,

and wise counsel taught,

da erz aller beste bekêrte.

where he-it all best turned.

er begunde bescheidenlichen

he began discerningly

sîn armen friunde rîchen

his poor friends to-enrich

und trôste ouch frömde armen,

and comforted also strange poor,

daz sich got erbarmen

that himself God to-pity

geruochte über der sêle heil:

might-deign over the soul's salvation:

gotes hiusern viel daz ander teil.

to-God's houses fell the other part.

alsus sô tet er sich abe

thus so put he himself away

bescheidenlichen sîner habe

discerningly of-his property

unz an ein geriute:

down to a clearing:

dar flôch er die liute.

thither fled he the people.

disiu jæmerliche geschiht

this piteous event

diu was sîn eines klage niht:

it was of-him alone lament not:

in klageten elliu diu lant

him lamented all the lands

dâ er inne was erkant,

where he in was known,

und ouch von vrömden landen

and also from foreign lands

die in nâch sage erkanden.

who him by report knew.

250

255

260

265

Der ê ditz geriute

He-who formerly this cleared

und der ez dannoch biute,

and he-who it still tills,

daz was ein frîer bûman

that was a free husbandman

270 der vil selten ie gewan

who very seldom ever got

dehein grôz ungemach,

any great discomfort,

daz andern gebûren doch geschach,

which to-other peasants yet happened,

die wirs geherret wâren,

who worse lorded were,

und sî die niht verbâren

and them they not spared

275 beidiu mit stiure und mit bete.

both with tax and with levy.

swaz dirre gebûre gerne tete,

whatever this peasant gladly did,

des dûhte sînen herren gnuoc:

of-that seemed to-his lord enough:

dar zuo er in übertruoc

there to he him excused

daz er dehein arbeit

that he any hardship

280 von frömdem gewalte leit.

from foreign power suffered.

des was deheiner sîn gelîch

of-that was none his equal

in dem lande alsô rîch.

in the land so rich.

zuo deme zôch sich
to him withdrew himself

sîn herre, der arme Heinrich.
his lord, the poor Heinrich.

swaz er in het ê gespart,
whatever he him had before spared, 285

wie wol daz nû gedienet wart
how well that now repaid was

und wie schône er sîn genôz!
and how fairly he of-it profited!

wan in vil lützel des verdrôz
for him very little of-it irked

swaz im geschach durch in.
whatever to-him happened for him.

er hete die triuwe und ouch den sin
he had the faithfulness and also the mind 290

daz er vil willeclîche leit
that he very willingly bore

den kumber und die arbeit
the affliction and the hardship

diu ime ze lidenne geschach.
which to-him for suffering befell.

er schuof ime rîch gemach.
he made for-him rich comfort.

Got hete dem meiger gegeben
God had to-the steward given 295

nâch sîner ahte ein reinez leben.
according-to his station a pure life.

er hete ein wol erbeiten lîp
he had a well laboring body

und ein wol werbendez wîp,
and a well managing woman,

dar zuo het er schœniu kint,
there to had he fair children,

300 diu gar des mannes fröude sint,
which wholly of-the man's joy are,

unde hete, sô man saget,
and bad, as one says,

under den kinden eine maget,
among the children a maiden,

ein kint von ahte jâren:
a child of eight years:

daz kunde wol gebâren
who could well behave

305 sô rehte gûetlîchen:
so right kindly:

sî wolte nie entwîchen
she would never depart

von ir herren einen fuoz:
from her lord a foot:

umb sîne hulde und sînen gruoꝝ
for his favor and his greeting

sô diente si ime alle wege
so served she to-him all ways

310 mit ir gûetlîchen pflege.
with her kindly tending.

sî was ouch sô genæme
she was also so agreeable

daz sî wol gezæme
that she well would-befit

ze kinde deme rîche
as child to-the empire

an ir wætliche.
in her fairness.

Die andern heten den sin

The others had the mind

315

daz sî ze rehter mâze in

that they in right measure him

wol gemîden kunden:

well to-avoid knew:

sô flôch sî zallen stunden

so fled she at-all hours

zuo ime und niender anders war.

to him and nowhere else whither.

sî was sîn kurzewîle gar.

she was his pastime wholly.

320

sî hete gar ir gemüete

she had wholly her spirit

mit reiner Kindes güete

with pure child's goodness

an ir herren gewant,

to her lord turned,

daz man sî zallen zîten vant

that one her at-all times found

under ir herren fuoze.

under her lord's foot.

325

mit süezer unmuoze

with sweet busyness

wonte sî ir herren bî.

dwelt she her lord by.

dar zuo sô liebte er ouch sî

there to so pleased he also her

swâ mite sô er mohte,

wherever with so he could,

und daz der meide tohte

and what to-the maiden served

330

zuo ir kintlîchen spil,

for her childlike play,

des gab der herre ir vil.

of-that gave the lord to-her much.

ouch half in sêre daz diu kint

also helped him greatly that the children

sô lîhte ze gewenenne sint.

so easily to accustom are.

335 er gewan ir swaz er veile vant,

he got for-her whatever he for-sale found,

spiegel unde hârbant,

mirror and hair-band,

gürtel unde vingerlîn

girdle and ring

und swaz kinden liep solte sîn.

and whatever to-children dear should be.

mit dienste brâhte sîz ûf die vart

with service brought she-it to the way

340 daz sî im alsô heimlich wart

that she to-him so intimate became

daz er sî sîn gemahle hiez.

that he her his betrothed called.

diu guote maget in liez

the good maiden him let

belîben selten eine:

remain seldom alone:

er dûhte sî vil reine.

he seemed to-her very pure.

345 swie starke ir daz geriete

however strongly to-her that would-advise

diu kindesche miete,

the childish gift,

iedoch geliebte irz aller meist

yet endeared to-her-it all most

von gotes gebe ein süezer geist.

from God's gift a sweet spirit.

The Farmer's Household

III

Three years on, the steward, his wife, and their daughter lament what his death would cost them. The husbandman asks why Salerno could not help, and Heinrich answers that he kept his gate open to worldly joy, took little heed of God, and is shut out of heaven. Then the cure: a maiden willing to be cut to the heart. The child, at his feet, hears it, and weeps that night over her sleeping parents' feet until they wake; asked, she says she weeps for their lord, and they answer that God has taken him from them.

Ir dienst was sô gütlich.

Her service was so kindly.

dô dô der arme Heinrich

then when the poor Heinrich

driu jâr dâ getwelte

three years there dwelt

unde im got gequelte

and to-him God tormented

mit grozem jâmer den lîp,

with great misery the body,

nû saz der meier und sîn wîp

now sat the steward and his woman

unde ir tohter, diu maget

and their daughter, the maiden

von der ich iu ê hân gesaget,

of whom I to-you before have told,

bî im in ir unmüezekeit

by him in their busyness

und begunden klagen ir herren leit.

and began to-lament their lord's sorrow.

diu klage tet in michel nôt:

the lament did to-them great distress:

350

355

360 wan sî vorhten daz sîn tot
for they feared that his death

sî sêre solte letzen
them sorely should injure

und vil gar entsetzen
and very wholly dispossess

êren unde guotes
of-honor and of-goods

und daz herters muotes
and that of-hartsber spirit

365 würde ein ander herre
would-become an other lord

si gedâhten alsô verre
they thought so far

unz dirre selbe bûman
until this same husbandman

alsus frâgen began.
thus to-ask began.

Er sprach 'lieber herre mîn,
He said 'dear lord my,

370 möht ez mit iuvern hulden sîn,
might it with your favor be,

ich frâgte vil gerne.
I would-ask very gladly.

sô vil ze Sâlerne
so many at Salerno

von arzenîen meister ist,
of medicine masters is,

wie kumet daz ir deheines list
how comes that of-them any-one's art

375 ze iuwerme ungesunde
for your ill-health

niht gerâten kunde?
not counsel could?

herre, des wundert mich.'

lord, at-that wonders me.'

dô holte der arme Heinrich

then drew the poor Heinrich

tiefen sûft von herzen

a-deep sigh from heart

mit bitterlîchem smerzen:

with bitter pain:

mit solher riuwe er dô sprach

with such rue he then spoke

daz ime der sûft daz wort zerbrach.

that to-him the sigh the word broke.

'Ich hân disen schemelîchen spot

'I have this shameful scorn

vil wol gedienet umbe got.

very well deserved from God.

wan dû sæhe wol hie vor

for thou saw well here before

daz hôh offen stuont mîn tor

that high open stood my gate

nâch werltlîcher wünne

after worldly delight

und daz niemen in sînem künne

and that no-one in his kin

sînen willen baz hete dan ich:

his will better had than I:

und was daz doch unmügelich,

and was that yet impossible,

wan ich enhete niht gar.

for I had not wholly.

380

385

390

dô nam ich sîn vil kleine war

then took I of-him very little heed

der mir daz selbe wunschleben

who to-me the same wish-life

von sînen gnâden hete gegeben.

by his grace had given.

395 daz herze mir dô alsô stuont

the heart to-me then so stood

als alle werlttôren tuont,

as all world-fools do,

den daz saget ir muot

to-whom that says their spirit

daz sî êre unde guot

that they honor and goods

âne got mûgen hân.

without God may have.

400 sus trouc ouch mich mîn tumber wân,

thus deceived also me my foolish hope,

wan ich in lützel ane sach

for I him little upon looked

von des genâden mir geschach

of whose grace to-me befell

vil êren unde guotes.

much of-honor and of-goods.

dô dô des hôhen muotes

then when of-the high spirit

405 den hôhen portenære bedrôz,

the high gatekeeper vexed,

die sælden porte er mir beslôz.

the salvation's gate he to-me closed.

dane kum ich leider niemer in:

there come I alas never in:

daz verworhte mir mîn tumber sin.

that forfeited for-me my foolish mind.

got hât durch râche an mich geleit

God has through vengeance on me laid

ein sus gewante siecheit

a thus fashioned sickness

410

die niemen mag erlœsen

which no-one can release

nû versmæhent mich die bæsen,

now despise me the base,

die biderben ruochent mîn niht.

the worthy care for-me not.

swie bæse er ist der mich gesiht,

however base he is who me sees,

des bæser muoz ich dannoch sîn.

of-that baser must I still be.

415

sîn unwert tuot er mir schîn:

his disdain makes he to-me manifest:

er wirfet diu ougen abe mir.

he throws the eyes away from-me.

nû schînet êrste an dir

now shines first in thee

dîn triuwe die dû hât,

thy faithfulness which thou hast,

daz dû mich siechen bî dir lâst

that thou me sick by thee lettest

420

und von mir niht enflühest.

and from me not fleest.

swie dû mich niht enschiuhest,

however thou me not shunnest,

swie ich niemen lieb sî danne dir,

however I to-no-one dear am but to-tee,

swie vil dîns heiles stê an mir,

however much of-thy welfare stands on me,

du vertrüegest doch wol mînen tôt.

thou wouldst-bear yet well my death.

425

nû wes unwert und wes nôt
now whose disdain and whose distress

wart ie zer werlte merre?
became ever in-the world greater?

hie vor was ich dîn herre
here before was I thy lord

und bin dîn dürftige nû.
and am thy beggar now.

430 mîn lieber friunt, nu koufest dû
my dear friend, now buyest thou

und mîn gemahle und dîn wîp
and my betrothed and thy woman

an mir den êwigen lîp
on me the eternal life

daz dû mich siechen bî dir lâst.
that thou me sick by thee lettest.

des dû mich gefrâget hâst,
what thou me asked hast,

435 daz sage ich dir vil gerne.
that tell I to-thee very gladly.

ichn kunde ze Sâlerne
I could at Salerno

einen meister niender vinden
a master nowhere find

der sich mîn underwinden
who himself of-me take-charge

getörste oder wolte.
dared or would.

440 wan dû mite ich solte
for there with I should

mîner sühte genesen,
of-my disease recover,

daz müeste ein solhiu sache wesen

that must a such thing be

die in der werlte nieman

which in the world no-one

mit nihte gewinnen kan.

with anything obtain can.

mir wart niht anders dâ gesaget

to-me was not otherwise there said

445

wan ich müeste haben eine maget

except I must have a maiden

diu vollen manbære

who fully marriageable

und ouch des willen wære

and also of-the will were

daz sî den tôt durch mich lite

that she the death for me should-suffer

und man sî zuo dem herzen snite,

and one her to the heart should-cut,

450

und mir wære niht anders guot

and to-me were not otherwise good

wan von ir herzen daz bluot.

except from her heart the blood.

nû ist genuoc unmügelich

now is quite impossible

daz ir deheiniu durch mich

that of-them any-one for me

gerne lîde den tôt.

gladly should-suffer the death.

455

des muoz ich schemeliche nôt

of-that must I shameful distress

tragen unz an mîn ende.

bear up to my end.

daz mirz got schiere sende!

that to-me-it God soon send!"

Daz er dem vater hete gesagt,

What he to-the father had said,

460 daz erhôrte ouch diu reine magt:

that heard also the pure maiden:

wan ez hete diu vil süeze

for it had the very sweet-one

ir lieben herren füeze

her dear lord's feet

stânde in ir schôzen.

standing in her lap.

man möhte wol genôzen

one might well liken

465 ir kintlich gemüete

her childlike spirit

hin ze der engel güete.

thither to the angels' goodness.

sîner rede nam sî war

of-his speech took she heed

unde marhte sî ouch gar:

and marked it also wholly:

sî enkam von ir herzen nie

it came from her heart never

470 unz man des nahtes slâfen gie.

until one of-the night to-sleep went.

dô sî zir vater füezen lac

when she at-her father's feet lay

und ouch ir muoter, sô sî pflac,

and also her mother, as she was-wont,

und sî beide entsliefen,

and they both fell-asleep,

manegen sûft tiefen

many-a sigh deep

475 holte sî von herzen.

drew she from heart.

umbe ir herren smerzen

over her lord's pain

wart ir riuwe alsô grôz

became her rue so great

daz ir ougen regen begôz

that of-her eyes rain drenched

der slâfenden fûeze.

the sleeping-ones' feet.

sus erwahte sî diu süeze.

thus woke them the sweet-one.

480

Dô sî der trehene enpfunden,

When they of-the tears felt,

si erwachten und begunden

they awoke and began

sî frâgen waz ir wære

her to-ask what to-her were

und welher hande swære

and of-what kind grief

sî alsô stille möhte klagen.

she so quietly might lament.

485

nu enwolte sî es in niht sagen,

now would she it to-them not tell,

wan daz ir vater aber tete

except that her father again did

vil manege drô unde bete

very many-a threat and a-plea

daz sî ez ime wolte sagen.

that she it to-him would tell.

sî sprach 'ir möhtent mit mir klagen.

she said 'you might with me lament.

490

waz möhte uns mê gewerren

what might us more trouble

danne umb unsern herren,

than about our lord,

daz wir den suln verliesen

that we him shall lose

und mit ime verkiesen

and with him forgo

495 beide guot und êre?

both goods and honor?

wir gewinnen niemer mêre

we get never more

deheinen herren alsô guot

any lord so good

der uns tuo daz er uns tuot.'

who to-us does what he to-us does.'

Sî sprâchen 'tohter, dû hâst wâr.

They said 'daughter, thou hast right.

500 nû frumet uns leider niht ein hâr

now avails us alas not a hair

unser riuwe und dîn klage:

our rue and thy lament:

liebez kint, dû von gedage.

dear child, there about be-silent.

ez ist uns alsô leit sô dir.

it is to-us as grievous as to-thee.

leider nû enmuge wir

alas now can we

505 ime ze keinen staten komen.

to-him to no aid come.

got der hât in uns benomen:

God he has him from-us taken:

het ez iemen anders getân,

had it anyone else done,

der müese unsern fluoch hân.'

he would-have-to our curse have.'

The Child Offers Her Life

IV

They quiet her, but it never leaves her heart, and the second night she resolves to give her life for him. Her weeping wakes them again, and she tells them plainly that she will die for her lord. They are grieved and dismayed; her father argues that she is a child who has not seen death. She answers that a long life is hardship and ends in death, and that her young life is cheaply given for the eternal one. Her mother weeps: God commands children to honor their parents, and she is their flower and the staff of their old age.

Alsus gesweigeten sî sî dô.

Thus silenced they her then.

die naht beleip sî unfrô

the night remained she unhappy

und morne allen den tac.

and on-the-morrow all the day.

swes iemen anders pflac,

whatever anyone else did,

diz enkam von ir herzen nie

this came from her heart never

unz man des andern nahtes gie

until one of-the other night went

slâfen nâch gewonheit.

to-sleep by custom.

dô sî sich hete geleit

when she herself had laid

an ir alte bettestat,

at her old bed-place,

sî bereite aber ein bat

she prepared again a bath

mit weinenden ougen:

with weeping eyes:

510

515

- 520 wan sî truoc tougen
for she bore secretly
 nâhe in ir gemüete
close in her spirit
 die aller meisten güete
the very greatest goodness
 die ich von kinde ie vernam.
that I of a-child ever heard.
 welch kint getete ouch ie alsam?
what child did also ever likewise?
- 525 des einen sî sich gar verwac,
of-the one she herself wholly resolved,
 gelebete sî morne den tac,
should-live she on-the-morrow the day,
 daz sî benamen ir leben
that she indeed her life
 umbe ir herren wolte geben.
for her lord would give.
 Von dem gedanke wart sî dô
From the thought became she then
- 530 vil ringes muotes unde frô,
very light of-spirit and glad,
 und hete deheine sorge mê,
and had no care more,
 wan ein vorhte diu tete ir wê,
except one fear which did to-her woe,
 sô sîz ir herren sagte,
when she-it to-her lord told,
 daz er dar an verzagte,
that he there at would-despair,

und swenne sîz in allen drin
and when she-it to-them all three

535

getæte kunt, daz sî an in
should-make known, that she in them

der gehenge niht enfunde
the consent not would-find

daz mans ir iht gunde.
that one-it to-her at-all would-grant.

Des wart sô grôz ir ungehabe
Of-that became so great her wailing

daz ir muoter dar abe
that her mother there from

540

unde ir vater wart erwahet
and her father was awakened

als ouch an der vordern naht.
as also on the former night.

sî rihten sich ûf zuo ir
they raised themselves up toward her

und sprâchen 'sich, waz wirret dir?
and said 'see, what troubles thee?

dû bist vil alwære
thou art very foolish

545

daz du dich sô manege swære
that thou thyself so many-a grief

von solher klage hâst an genomen
from such lament hast on taken

der niemen mac zeim ende komen.
whiche no-one can to-an end come.

war umbe lâstu uns niht slâfen?
where fore lettest-thou us not sleep?'

sus begunden sî sî strâfen.
thus began they her to-rebuke.

550

waz ir diu klage töhte,
what to-her the lament would-avail,

die niemen doch enmöhte

which no-one yet could

verenden noch gebüezen?

end nor amend?

sus wänden sî die süezen

thus thought they the sweet-one

555 gesweigen an der selben stunt:

to-silence at the same hour:

dô was ir wille in vil unkunt.

then was her will to-them very unknown.

Sus antwurte in diu maget.

Thus answered to-them the maiden.

‘als uns mîn herre hât gesaget,

‘as to-us my lord has said,

sô mac man in vil wol ernern.

so can one him very well save.

560 zewâre, ir welt mirz danne wern,

truly, you will to-me-it then refuse,

sô bin ich ze der arzenîe guot.

so am I for the medicine good.

ich bin ein maget und hân den muot,

I am a maiden and have the spirit,

ê ich in sihe verderben,

before I him see perish,

ich wil ê für in sterben.’

I will rather for him die.’

565 Von dirre rede wurden dô

From this speech became then

trûric unde unfrô

sad and unhappy

beide muoter unde vater.

both mother and father.

sîne tohter die bater

his daughter her asked-be

daz sî die rede lieze

that she the speech should-leave

und ir herren gehieze

and to-her lord should-promise

daz sî geleisten möhte,

what she perform might,

wand ir diz niht entöhte.

for to-her this not would-avail.

Er sprach 'tohter, dû bist ein kint

He said 'daughter, thou art a child

und dîne triuwe die sint

and thy faithfulness they are

ze grôz an disen dingen.

too great in these things.

du enmaht es niht für bringen

thou can it not forth bring

als dû uns hie hâst verjehen.

as thou to-us here hast declared.

dû hâst des tôdes niht gesehen.

thou hast the death not seen.

swenn ez dir kumet ûf die frist

when it to-thee comes upon the term

daz des dehein rât ist,

that of-it no help is,

dû enmüezest sterben,

thou unless-must die,

und möhtest dûz erwerben,

and couldst thou-it obtain,

dû lebetest gerner dannoch:

thou wouldst-live more-gladly still:

wan dun kœme nie in leider loch.

for thou would-come never in a-worse hole.

570

575

580

585 dâ von tuo zuo dînen munt:
there fore do shut thy mouth:

und wirstû für dise stunt
and becomest-thou after this hour

der rede iemer mêre lût,
of-the speech ever more loud,

ez gât dir ûf dîne hût.
it goes for-thee upon thy hide.'

Alsus sô wânde er sî dô
Thus so thought he her then

590 bêdiu mit bete und mit drô
both with plea and with threat

gesweigen: dô enmohter.
to-silence: then could-not-be.

sus antwurt ime sîn tohter.
thus answered to-him his daughter.

'Vater mân, swie tump ich sî,
'Father my, however foolish I be,

mir wonet iedoch diu witze bî
to-me dwells yet the understanding by

595 daz ich von sage wol die nôt
that I from report well the distress

erkenne daz des lîbes tôt
know that of-the body death

ist starc unde strenge.
is strong and harsh.

swer ouch danne die lenge
whoever also then the length

mit arbeiten leben sol,
with hardships live shall,

600 dem ist iedoch niht ze wol.
to-him is yet not too well.

wan swenne er hie geringet

for when he here struggles

und ûf sîn alter bringet

and to his old-age brings

den lîp mit michelre nôt,

the body with great distress,

sô muoz er lîden doch den tôt.

so must he suffer yet the death.

ist ime diu sêle danne verlorn,

(if)-is to-him the soul then lost,

sô wære er bezzer ungeboren.

so were he better unborn.

ez ist mir komen ûf daz zil,

it is to-me come upon the goal,

des ich got iemer loben wil,

for-which I God ever praise will,

daz ich den jungen lîp mac geben

that I the young body may give

umbe daz êwige leben.

for the eternal life.

nû sult ir mirz niht leiden.

now shall you to-me-it not embitter.

ich wil mir unde iu beiden

I will for-me and for-you both

vil harte wol mite varn.

very greatly well with fare.

ich mag iuch eine wol bewarn

I can you alone well protect

vor schaden und vor leide,

from harm and from sorrow,

als ich iu nû bescheide.

as I to-you now explain.

ir hânt êre unde guot:

you have honor and goods:

605

610

615

daz meinet mînes herren muot,
that intends my lord's spirit,

wan er iu leit nie gesprach
for he to-you sorrow never spoke

620 und ouch daz guot nie abe gebrach.
and also the goods never away took.

die wîle daz er leben sol
the while that he live shall

sô stêt iuwer sache wol:
so stands your case well:

und lâze wir den sterben,
and let we him die,

sô müezen wir verderben.
so must we perish.

625 den wil ich uns fristen
him will I for-us preserve

mit alsô schœnen listen
with so fair a-device

dâ mite wir alle sîn genesen.
there with we all are saved.

nû gunnet mirs, wan ez muoz wesen.'
now grant to-me-of-it, for it must be.'

Diu muoter weinende sprach,
The mother weeping said,

630 dô sî der tohter ernst ersach,
when she of-the daughter earnestness saw,

'gedenke, tohter, liebez kint,
'think, daughter, dear child,

wie grôz die arbeite sint
how great the hardships are

die ich durch dich erliten hân,
which I for thee endured have,

und lâ mich bezzern lôn enpfân

and let me a-better reward receive

dan ich dich høre sprechen.

than I thee hear speak.

dû wilt mîn herze brechen.

thou wilt my heart break.

senfte mir der rede ein teil.

soften for-me of-the speech a bit.

jâ wiltû allez dîn heil

indeed wilt-thou all thy salvation

an uns verwürken wider got.

on us forfeit against God.

wan gedenkest dû an sîn gebot?

why-not thinkest thou on his commandment?

jâ gebôt er unde bater

indeed commanded he and asked-be

daz man muoter unde vater

that one mother and father

minne und êre biete,

love and honor should-offer,

und geheizet daz ze miete

and promises that as hire

daz der sêle rât werde

that to-the soul help become

und lanclîp ûf der erde.

and long-life on the earth.

dû gihst dû wellest dîn leben

thou sayest thou wouldst thy life

umb unser beider fröude geben:

for our both joy give:

dû wilt uns beiden

thou wilt to-us both

daz leben vaste leiden.

the life sorely embitter.

635

640

645

650

daz dîn vater unde ich

that thy father and I

gerne leben, daz ist durch dich.

gladly live, that is for thee.

waz solte uns lîp unde guot,

what should to-us body and goods,

waz solte uns werltlich muot,

what should to-us worldly spirit,

swenne wir dîn enbæren?

when we of-thee should-lack?

dune * * *

thou-not (lacuna)

jâ soltû, liebiu tohter mîn,

indeed shouldst-thou, dear daughter my,

unser beider fröude sîn,

our both joy be,

655 gar unsers lîbes wünne,

wholly of-our life delight,

ein bluome in dîme künne,

a flower in thy kin,

unsers alters ein stap.

of-our age a staff.

und lâstû uns über dîn grap

and lettest-thou us over thy grave

gestên von dînen schulden,

stand by thy fault,

660 dû muost von gotes hulden

thou must from God's favor

iemer sîn gescheiden:

ever be parted:

daz koufest an uns beiden.'

that buy on us both.'

wiltu uns tohter wesen guot,

(if)-wilt-thou to-us daughter be good,

sô soltû rede und den muot

so shouldst-thou speech and the purpose

durch unsers herren hulde lân,

for of-our lord's favor leave,

die ich von dir vernomen hân.

which I from thee heard have.

What the Maiden Answers Her Parents

V

She owes soul, body, and beauty to her parents after God, and will not spend them on a world whose sweetest joy is heart-sorrow and long life a sudden death. Unmarried, she may lose her lord and go undowered; married, a dear husband is distress and a hateful one death. So she names the free husbandman she wants, whose farm no fire, hail, or flood strikes: our Lord Jesus Christ. Let them take joy in their other children; her mother will not stand over her grave, for it will happen at Salerno, a death that frees all four, and her most of all.

Si sprach 'muoter, ich getrûwe dir

She said 'mother, I trust thee

und mînem vater her ze mir

and my father hither toward me

aller der genâden wol

of-all the favors well

der vater unde muoter sol

which father and mother should

leisten ir kinde,

render to-their child,

als ich ez wol bevinde

as I it well perceive

an iu allertegelich.

in you every-day.

- 670 von iuwern gnâden hân ich
from your favor have I
 die sêle und einen schœnen lîp.
the soul and a fair body.
 mich lobet man unde wîp,
me praise man and woman,
 und alle die mich sehende sint,
and all who me seeing are,
 ich sî daz schœneste kint
I be the fairest child
- 675 daz sî zir lebene haben gesehen.
that they in-their life have seen.
 wem solt ich der genâden jehen
to-whom should I of-the favor acknowledge
 niuwan iu zwein nâch gote?
except to-you two after God?
 des sol ich ze iuwerm gebote
therefore shall I at your command
 iemer vil gerne stân:
ever very gladly stand:
- 680 wie michel reht ich des hân!
how great right I of-that have!
 muoter, sæligez wîp,
mother, blessed woman,
 sît ich nû sêle unde lîp
since I now soul and body
 von iuwern genâden hân,
from your favor have,

sô lântz an iuvern hulden stân

so let-it on your favor stand

daz ich ouch die beide

that I also them both

von dem tiuvel scheide

from the devil part

und mich gote müeze geben.

and myself to-God may give.

jâ ist dirre werlte leben

indeed is this world's life

niuwan der sêle verlust.

nothing-but the soul's loss.

ouch hât mich werltlîch gelust

also has me worldly desire

unz her noch niht berüeret,

until now yet not touched,

der hin zer helle fûeret.

which away to-the hell leads.

nû wil ich gote genâde sagen

now will I to-God thanks say

daz er in mînen jungen tagen

that he in my young days

mir die sinne hât gegeben

to-me the senses has given

daz ich ûf diz brœde leben

that I upon this frail life

ahte harte kleine.

reckon very little.

ich wil mich alsus reine

I will myself thus pure

antwûrten in gotes gewalt.

deliver into God's power.

ich fürhte, solt ich werden alt,

I fear, should I become old,

685

690

695

700

daz mich der werlte süeze
that me the world's sweetness

zuhte under füeze,
would-drag under feet,

als sî vil manegen hât gezogen
as it very many has drawn

den ouch ir süeze hât betrogen:
whom also its sweetness has deceived:

705 sô würde ich lîhte gote entsaget.
so would-become I perhaps to-God renounced.

gote müeze ez sîn geklaget
to-God may it be lamented

daz ich unz morne leben sol:
that I until tomorrow live shall:

mir behaget diu werlt niht sô wol.
to-me pleases the world not so well.

ir meiste liep ist herzeleit
its greatest pleasure is heart-sorrow

710 (daz sî iu für wâr geseit),
(that be to-you for truth said),

ir süezer lôn ein bitter nôt,
its sweet reward a bitter distress,

ir langleben ein gæher tât.
its long-life a sudden death.

wir hân niht gewisses mê
we have nothing certain more

wan hiute wol und morne wê
except today well and tomorrow woe

715 und ie ze jungest der tât.
and ever at last the death.

daz ist ein jæmerlîchiu nôt.
that is a piteous distress.

ez enschirmet geburt noch guot,
it shields-not birth nor goods,

schœne, sterke, hôher muot,
beauty, strength, high spirit,

ez enfrumt tugent noch êre
it avails virtue nor honor

für den tôt niht mêre
against the death nothing more

dann ungeburt und untugent.
than low-birth and un-virtue.

unser leben und unser jugent
our life and our youth

ist ein nebel unde ein stoup,
is a mist and a dust,

unser stæte bibent als ein loup.
our constancy trembles as a leaf.

er ist ein vil verschaffen gouch
he is a very ill-made fool

der gerne in sich vazzt den rouch,
who gladly into himself takes the smoke,

ez sî wîp oder man,
it be woman or man,

der diz niht wol bedenken kan
who this not well consider can

und ouch der werlt nâch volgende ist.
and also the world after following is.

wan uns ist über den fûlen mist
for to-us is over the foul dung

der pfeller hie gespreitet:
the silk here spread:

swen nû der blic verleitet,
whom now the gleam misleads,

720

725

730

der ist zuo der helle geborn

he is to the hell born

unde enhât niht mê verlorn

and has not more lost

735 wan beidiu sêle unde lîp.

than both soul and body.

nu gedenkent, sæligez wîp,

now think, blessed woman,

müeterlîcher triuwe

of-motherly faithfulness

und senftent iuwer riuwe

and soften your rue

die ir dâ habent umbe mich:

which you there have about me:

740 so bedenket ouch der vater sich.

so bethinks also the father himself.

ich weiz wol daz er mir heiles gan.

I know well that he to-me of-salvation grants.

er ist ein alsô biderber man

he is a so worthy man

daz er erkennet wol daz ir

that he perceives well that you

unlange doch mit mir

not-long yet with me

745 iuwer fröude mügent hân,

your joy may have,

ob ich joch lebende bestân.

if I even alive remain.

belîbe ich âne man bî iu

remain I without husband by you

zwei jâr oder driu,

two years or three,

sô ist mân herre lîhte tôt,

so is my lord perhaps dead,

und kument in sô grôze nô
and come into so great distress

750

vil lîhte von armuot
very likely from poverty

daz ir mir alsolhez guot
that you to-me such goods

zeinem man niht mugent geben,
to-a husband not can give,

ich enmüeze alse swache leben
I unless-must so meanly live

daz ich iu lieber wære tât.
that I to-you rather were dead.

755

nu verswîge wir aber der nô,
now pass-over we however the distress,

daz uns niht enwerre
that us nothing troubles

und uns mîn lieber herre
and to-us my dear lord

were und alsô lange lebe
last and so long live

unz daz man mich zeim manne gebe
until that one me to-a husband give

760

der rîche sî unde wert:
who rich be and worthy:

sô ist geschehen des ir dâ gert
so is happened what you there desire

und wænent mir sî wol geschehen.
and think to-me be well happened.

anders hât mir mîn muot verjehen.
otherwise has to-me my spirit declared.

wirt er mir lieb, daz ist ein nô:
becomes he to-me dear, that is a distress:

765

wirt er mir leit, daz ist der tât.
becomes he to-me hateful, that is the death.

wan sô hân ich iemer leit

for so have I ever sorrow

und bin mit ganzer arbeit

and am with whole hardship

gescheiden von gemache

parted from ease

770 mit maneger hande sache

with many-a kind matter

diu den wîben wirret

which to-the women troubles

und sî ze fröuden irret.

and them in joys hinders.

nû setzt mich in den vollen rât

now set me into the full store

der dâ niemer zergât.

which there never passes-away.

775 mîn gert ein frîer bûman

of-me desires a free husbandman

dem ich wol mînes lîbes gan.

to-whom I well of-my person grant.

zwâre dem sult ir mich geben,

truly to-him shall you me give,

sô ist geschaffet wol mîn leben.

so is ordered well my life.

im gêt sîn pfluoc harte wol,

for-him goes his plow very well,

780 sîn hof ist alles râtes vol,

his farm is of-all store full,

da enstirbet ros noch daz rint,

there dies-not horse nor the cattle,

da enmüent diu weinenden kint,

there weary-not the weeping children,

da enist ze heiz noch ze kalt,

there is-not too hot nor too cold,

dâ wirt von jâren niemen alt,
there becomes from years no-one old,

der alte wirt junger,
the old becomes younger,

da enist frost noch hunger,
there is-not frost nor hunger,

da enist deheiner slahte leit,
there is no kind-of sorrow,

da ist ganziu fröude ân arbeit.
there is whole joy without hardship.

ze dem wil ich mich ziehen
to him will I myself betake

und solhen bû fliehen
and such husbandry flee

den daz fiur und der hagel sleht
whith the fire and the hail strikes

und der wâc abe tweht,
and the flood away washes,

mit dem man ringet unde ie ranc.
with whith one struggles and ever struggled.

swaz man daz jâr alse lanc
whatever one the year so long

dar ûf gearbeiten mac,
there upon labor may,

daz verliuset schiere ein halber tac.
that loses quickly a half day.

den bû den wil ich lâzen:
that husbandry it will I leave:

er sî von mir verwâzen.
it be by me accursed.

ir minnent mich: deist billich.
you love me: that-is right.

785

790

795

- 800 nû sihe ich gerne daz mich
now see I gladly that me
 iuwer minne iht unminne.
your love not-at-all un-love.
 ob ir iuch rehter sinne
if you yourselves of-right senses
 an mir verstân kunnent
in me understand can
 und ob ir mir gunnent
and if you to-me grant
- 805 beide guotes unde êren,
both of-goods and of-honor,
 sô lâzet mich kêren
so let me turn
 ze unserm herren Jêsû Krist,
to our lord Jesus Christ,
 des gnâde alsô stæte ist
whose grace so constant is
 daz sî niemer zergât,
that it never passes-away,
- 810 unde ouch zuo mir armen hât
and also toward me poor has
 alsô grôze minne
so great love
 als zeiner küniginne.
as to-a queen.
 ich sol von mînen schulden
I shall by my fault
 ûz iuvern hulden
out-of your favor
- 815 niemer komen, wil ez got.
never come, (if)-will it God.

ez ist gewisse sîn gebot
it is surely his commandment

daz ich iu sî undertân,
that I to-you be subject,

wan ich den lîp von iu hân:
for I the body from you have:

daz leist ich âne riuwe.
that render I without rue.

ouch sol ich mîne triuwe
also shall I my faithfulness

an mir selber niht brechen.
on me self not break.

ich hôte ie daz sprechen,
I heard ever that say,

swer den andern fröuwet sô
whoever the other gladdens so

daz er selbe wirt unfrô,
that he himself becomes unhappy,

und swer den andern krœnet
and whoever the other crowns

und sich selben hænet,
and himself self shames,

der triuwen sî ze vil.
of-that faithfulness be too much.

wie gerne ich iu des volgen wil
how gladly I to-you in-that obey will

daz ich iu triuwe leiste,
that I to-you faithfulness render,

mir selber doch die meiste.
to-me self yet the greatest.

welt ir mir wenden mîn heil,
(if)-will you from-me turn my salvation,

820

825

830

sô lâz ich iuch ein teil

so let I you a bit

ê nâch mir geweinen,

rather after me weep,

ich enwelle mir erscheinen

I (than)-would-not to-me show

835 wes ich mir selber schuldic bin.

what I to-me self owing am.

ich wil iemer dâ hin

I will ever there thither

da ich volle fröude vinde.

where I full joy find.

ir hânt doch mê kinde:

you have yet more children:

diu lânt iuwer fröude sîn

them let your joy be

840 und getrœstent ir iuch mîn.

and console you yourselves of-me.

wan mir mac daz nieman erwern

for from-me can that no-one withhold

zwâre, ich enwelle ernern

truly, I unless-would save

mînen herren unde mich.

my lord and me.

muoter, jâ hôte ich dich

mother, indeed heard I thee

845 klagen unde sprechen ê,

lament and say before,

ez tæte dîme herzen wê,

it would-do to-thy heart woe,

soltest dû ob mîme grabe stân.

shouldst thou over my grave stand.

des wirst dû harte wol erlân:

of-that wilt-become thou very well released:

dû stâst ob mîme grabe niht.

thou standest over my grave not.

wan dâ mir der tôt geschiht,

for there to-me the death happens,

daz enlât dich niemen sehen:

that lets thee no-one see:

ez sol ze Sâlerne geschehen.

it shall at Salerno happen.

dâ sol uns viere der tôt

there shall us four the death

læsen von aller slahte nôt.

release from every kind-of distress.

des tôdes des genese wir,

of-that death of-it recover we,

und ich doch verre baz dan ir'

and I yet far better than you.'

850

They Consent, and the Road to Salerno

VI

The parents hear the Holy Ghost in the child, as with Saint Nicholas in the cradle, and give way; grief takes their speech, and the mother falls into convulsions. At dawn the maiden wakes her lord and offers herself. Heinrich thanks her, tells her death is no gentle thing, that children want a thing headlong and rue it after, and sends her to her parents; they consent, and all four weep. He thanks the three and accepts, and has fine horses, ermine, samite, and the best sable to be found made ready for the road to Salerno.

Dô sî daz kint dô sâhen

When they the child then saw

ze dem tôde sô gâhen,

to the death so hasten,

855

und ez sô wîslîchen sprach

and it so wisely spoke

unde menschlich reht zerbrach,

and human law broke,

si begunden ahten under in

they began to-consider among them

860 daz die wîsheit und den sin

that the wisdom and the mind

niemer erzeigen kunde

never show could

dehein zunge in kindes munde.

any tongue in a-child's mouth.

sî jâhen daz der heiliggeist

they said that the Holy-Ghost

der rede wære ir volleist,

of-the speech were her helper,

865 der ouch sante Niklauses pflac

who also saint Nicholas tended

dô er in der wagen lac

when he in the cradle lay

und in die wîsheit lêrte

and him the wisdom taught

daz er ze gote kêrte

that he to God turned

sîne kintlîche güete:

his childlike goodness:

870 und bedâhten sich in ir gemüete

and bethought themselves in their spirit

daz sî niht enwolden

that they not would

sî wenden noch ensolden

her turn nor should

des sî sich hete an genomen:

from-what she herself had on taken:

der wille sî ir von gote komen.

the will be to-her from God come.

von jâmer erkalte in der lîp,

from misery grew-cold to-them the body,

dô der meiger und sîn wîp

when the steward and his woman

an dem bette sâzen

at the bed sat

und vil gar vergâzen

and very wholly forgot

durch des kindes minne

for the child's love

der zungen und der sinne

of-the tongue and of-the senses

sâ ze der selben stunde.

at-once at the same hour.

ir enwederz enkunde

of-them neither could

einic wort gesprechen.

a-single word speak.

daz gegihte begunde brechen

the convulsion began to-break

die muoter von leide.

the mother from sorrow.

sus gesâzen sî beide

thus sat they both

riuwic unde unfrô

sorrowful and unhappy

unz sî sich bedâhten dô

until they themselves bethought then

waz in ir trûren töhte:

what to-them their mourning would-avail:

875

880

885

- 890 so man ir doch niht enmöhte
since one her yet not could
 benemen ir willen unde ir muot,
take-away her will and her spirit,
 so enwære in niht alsô guot
so were to-them nothing so good
 sô daz sî irs wol gunden,
as that they to-her-of-it well granted,
 wan sî doch niht enkunden
for they yet not could
- 895 ir niemer werden âne baz;
of-her ever become without better;
 enpfingen sî der rede haz,
should-receive they of-the speech hatred,
 ez möhte in umbe ir herren
it might for-them about their lord
 vil harte wol gewerren,
very greatly well trouble,
 und verviengen anders niht dâ mite.
and would-gain otherwise nothing there with.
- 900 mit vil willeclîchem site
with very willing manner
 sprâchen sî beide dô
spoke they both then
 daz sî der rede wæren frô.
that they of-the speech were glad.
 Des fröute sich diu reine maget.
Of-that rejoiced herself the pure maiden.
 dô ez vil kûme was getaget
when it very barely had dawned
- 905 dô gie sî dâ ir herre slief.
then went she where her lord slept.
 sîn trûtgemahle ime rief,
his dear-betrothed to-him called,

sî sprach 'herre, slafent ir?'

she said 'lord, sleep you?'

'nein ich, gemahle, sage mir,

'no I, betrothed, tell me,

wie bistû hiute alsô fruo?'

how art-thou today so early?'

'herre, dâ twinget mich derzuo

'lord, there compels me thereto

910

der jâmer iuwerr siecheit.'

the misery of-your illness.'

er sprach 'gemahel, daz ist dir leit:

he said 'betrothed, that is to-thee grievous:

daz erzeigest du an mir wol,

that showest thou on me well,

als ez dir got vergelten sol.

as it to-thee God repay shall.

nune mag es dehein rât sîn.'

now can of-it no remedy be.'

915

'entriuwen, lieber herre mîn,

'in-faith, dear lord my,

iuwer wirt vil guot rât.

for-you becomes very good remedy.

sît ez alsus umbe iuch stât

since it thus about you stands

daz man iu gehelfen mac,

that one you help can,

ichn gesûme iuch niemer tac.

I delay you never a-day.

920

herre, ir hânt uns doch gesaget,

lord, you have to-us indeed said,

ob ir hetent eine maget

if you had a maiden

diu gerne den tôt durch iuch lite,

who gladly the death for you should-suffer,

dâ soltent ir genesen mite.

there should you recover with.

925 diu wil ich weizgot selbe sin:

that will I God-knows myself be:

iuwer leben ist nützer dan daz mîn.'

your life is more-useful than the mine.'

Dô gnâdete ir der herre

Then thanked her the lord

des willen harte verre.

for-that will very greatly.

und ervolleten im diu ougen

and filled to-him the eyes

930 von jâmer alsô tougen.

from misery so secretly.

er sprach 'gemahel, ja ist der tôt

he said 'betrotted, indeed is the death

iedoch niht ein senftiu nôt,

yet not a gentle distress,

als dû dir lihte hâst gedâht.

as thou to-thyself perhaps hast thought.

dû hâst mich des wol innen brâht,

thou hast me of-that well aware brought,

935 möhstestû, dû hüldest mir.

couldst-thou, thou wouldst-help me.

des genüezet mich wol von dir.

of-that suffices me well from thee.

ich erkenne dînen süezen muot:

I know thy sweet spirit:

dîn wille ist reine unde guot.

thy will is pure and good.

ichn sol ouch niht mê von dir gern.

I shall also nothing more from thee desire.

dû maht mich des niht wol gewern

thou mayst me of-that not well grant

940

daz dû dâ gesprochen hâst.

what thou there spoken hast.

die triuwe die du an mir begâst,

the faithfulness which thou on me performest,

die sol dir vergelten got.

that shall to-thee repay God.

ditz wære der lantliute spot,

this were the country-folk's mockery,

swaz ich mich für dise stunde

whatever I myself after this hour

945

arzenîen underwunde,

of-medicine should-undertake,

und mich doch niht vervienge

and me yet nothing should-avail

wan als ez doch ergienge.

except as it yet turned-out.

gemahele, dû tuost als diu kint

betrothed, thou dost as the children

diu dâ gâhes muotes sint:

who there of-sudden spirit are:

950

swaz den kumet in den muot,

whatever to-them comes into the spirit,

ez sî übel oder guot,

it be bad or good,

dar zuo ist in allen gâch,

there to is to-them all urgent,

und geriuwet sî sêre dar nâch.

and rues them sorely there after.

gemahele, alsô tuost ouch dû.

betrothed, so dost also thou.

955

der rede ist dir ze muote nû:

of-the speech is to-thee in mind now:

der die von dir nemen wolte,

he-who it from thee take would,

sô manz danne enden solte,

when one-it then finish should,

so gerüwez dich vil lîhte doch.'

then would-rue-it thee very likely yet.'

960 und daz sî sich ein teil noch

and that she herself a bit still

baz bedæhte, des bater.

better should-consider, of-that asked-be.

er sprach 'dîn muoter und din vater

he said 'thy mother and thy father

die enmugen dîn niht wol enbern.

they can of-thee not well be-without.

ich sol ouch niht ir leides gern

I shall also not their sorrow desire

965 die mir ie gnâde tâten.

who to-me ever favor did.

swaz sî dir beide râten,

whatever they to-thee both advise,

liebe gemahle, daz tuo.'

dear betrothed, that do.'

hie mite lachete er dar zuo,

here with laughed he there to,

wan er lützel sich versach

for he little himself expected

970 daz doch sider dô geschach.

what yet afterward then happened.

Sus sprach er zuo der guoter.

Thus spoke he to the good-one.

der vater und diu muoter

the father and the mother

sprâchen 'lieber herre,

said 'dear lord,

ir hânt uns vil verre

you have to-us very greatly

geliebet und geêret:

endeared and honored:

daz enwære niht wol bekêret,

that were not well requited,

wir engültenz iu mit guote.

we unless-repaid-it to-you with good.

unser tochter ist ze muote

our daughter is in mind

daz sî den tôt durch iuch dol:

that she the death for you suffer:

des gunne wir ir harte wol.

of-that grant we to-her very well.

ez ist hiute der dritte tac

it is today the third day

daz sî uns allez ane lac

that she us continually at lay

daz wir ir sîn gunden:

that we to-her of-it granted:

nû hât sîz an uns funden.

now has she-it from us found.

nû lâze iuch got mit ir genesen:

now let you God with her recover:

wir wellen ir durch iuch entwesen.'

we will of-her for you be-without.'

Do im sîn gemahle dô bôt

When to-him his betrothed then offered

für sînen siechtuom ir tôt

for his sickness her death

und man ir ernst ersach,

and one her earnestness saw,

975

980

985

- 990 dô wart dô michel ungemach
then arose then great discomfort
 und jæmerlîch gebærde.
and piteous bearing.
 manc mislîchiu beswærde
many-a various affliction
 huop sich dô under in,
raised itself then among them,
 zwischen dem herren unde in drin.
between the lord and them three.
- 995 ir vater unde ir muoter die
her father and her mother they
 erhuoben michel weinen hie:
raised great weeping here:
 des weinens tet in michel nôt
of-that weeping did to-them great need
 umb ir vil lieben Kindes tôť.
over their very dear child's death.
 nu begunde ouch der herre
now began also the lord
- 1000 gedenken alsô verre
to-think so deeply
 an des Kindes triuwe,
on the child's faithfulness,
 und begreif in ouch ein riuwe,
and seized him also a rue,
 daz er sêre weinen began,
that he sorely to-weep began,
 und zwîvelte vaste dran
and doubted greatly thereon
- 1005 weder ez bezzer getân
whether it better done
 möhte sîn oder verlân.
might be or left-undone.

von vorhten weinte ouch diu maget:

from fear wept also the maiden:

sî wânde er wære dran verzaget.

she thought he were thereon despairing.

sus wârens alle unfrô.

thus were-they all unhappy.

sî gerten keines dankes dô.

they desired no thanks then.

1010

Ze jungest dô bedâhte sich

At last then bethought himself

ir herre, der arme Heinrich,

her lord, the poor Heinrich,

und begunde sagen in

and began to-say to-them

grôze gnâde allen drin

great thanks to-all three

der triuwen und des guotes

for-the faithfulness and for-the goodness

1015

(diu maget wart rîches muotes

(the maiden became of-rich spirit

daz ers gevolgete gerne),

that he-it consented gladly),

und bereite sich ze Sâlerne

and prepared himself for Salerno

sô er schierste mohte.

as he soonest could.

swaz ouch der megede tohte,

whatever also to-the maiden befitted,

1020

daz wart vil schiere bereit:

that was very quickly made-ready:

schoëniu pfert und rîchiu kleit,

fair horses and rich clothes,

diu sî getruoc nie vor der zît:

which she wore never before the time:

hermîn unde samît,

ermine and samite,

1025 den besten zobel den man vant,

the best sable that one found,

daz was der megede gewant.

that was the maiden's clothing.

The Physician Puts Her to the Test

VII

God's goodness alone makes the parting bearable, and the parents' grief turns to joy. At Salerno the master doubts her, takes her aside, and describes it — stripped bare, bound hand and foot, her heart broken out of her living — and warns that a hair's regret loses them both. She laughs, tells him his fear would suit a woman and a hare, and stands as calmly as if going to a dance. Convinced, he promises her lord a cure, bolts him out of the chamber, and she tears off her clothes and stands bare without a hair's shame.

Nû wer möhte volgesagen

Now who might fully-tell

die herzeriuwe und daz klagen,

the heart-rue and the lamenting,

der muoter grimmigez leit

the mother's fierce sorrow

1030 und ouch des vater arbeit?

and also the father's hardship?

ez wære wol under in beiden

it were indeed between them both

ein jæmerlichez scheiden,

a piteous parting,

dô sî ir liebez kint von in
when they their dear child from them

gefrumten sô gesunde hin
sent so healthy away

niemer mê ze sehenne in den tô, 1035
never more to see into the death,

wan daz in senftet ir nô
except that to-them softens their distress

diu reine gotes güete,
the pure God's goodness,

von der doch daz gemüete
from which indeed the spirit

ouch dem jungen kinde quam
also to-the young child came

daz ez den tô gerne nam. 1040
that it the death gladly took.

ez was âne ir rât komen:
it had without their counsel come:

dâ von wart von ir herzen genomen
there from was from their heart taken

alliu klage und swære,
all lament and grief,

wan ez anders wunder wære
for it otherwise a-wonder were

daz in ir herze niht zerbrach. 1045
that to-them their heart not broke.

ze liebe wart ir ungemach,
to pleasure became their discomfort,

daz sî dar nâch deheine nô
so-that they there after no distress

liten umbe ir kindes tô.
suffered over their child's death.

Sus fuor gegen Sâlerne

Thus fared toward Salerno

1050 frœlich unde gerne

joyfully and gladly

diu maget mit ir herren.

the maiden with her lord.

waz möhte ir nû gewerren,

what might her now trouble,

wan daz der wec sô verre was,

except that the way so far was,

daz sî sô lange genas?

that she so long lived?

1055 und do er sî vollebrâhte

and when he her fully-brought

hin als er gedâhte

there as he intended

dâ er sînen meister vant,

where he his master found,

dô wart ime zehant

then was to-him at-once

vil frœlichen gesaget,

very joyfully told,

1060 er hete brâht eine maget

he had brought a maiden

die er in gewinnen hiez:

whom he him get bade:

dar zuo er in sî sehen liez.

there to he him her see let.

Daz dûhte in ungelouplich:

That seemed to-him unbelievable:

er sprach 'kint, weder hâstû dich

he said 'child, whether hast-thou thyself

1065 diss willen selbe bedâht?

of-this will self resolved?

od bistû ûf die rede brâht

or art-thou to the speech brought

von bete od dînes herren drô?’

by entreaty or of-thy lord's threat?’

diu maget antwurt im alsô,

the maiden answered to-him thus,

daz sî die selben ræte

that she the same counsels

von ir selber herzen tæte.

from her own heart made.

1070

Des nam in michel wunder,

Of-that took him great wonder,

und fuorte sî besunder

and led her apart

und beswuor sî vil verre

and adjured her very earnestly

ob ir iht ir herre

whether to-her at-all her lord

die rede hete ûz erdrôt.

the speech had out extorted.

1075

er sprach ‘kint dir ist nôt

he said ‘child for-thee is need

daz dû dich berâtest baz,

that thou thyself considerest better,

und sage dir rehte umbe waz.

and (I)-tell to-thee rightly about what.

ob dû den tôt liden muost

if thou the death suffer must

und daz niht vil gerne tuost,

and that not very gladly dost,

1080

sô ist dîn junger lîp tôt,

so is thy young body dead,

und frumet uns leider niht ein brôt.

and avails us alas not a loaf.

nu enhil mich dînes willen niht.

now hide from-me of-thy will not.

ich sage dir wie dir geschiht.

I tell to-thee how to-thee happens.

1085 ich ziuhe dich ûz rehte blôz,

I strip thee off quite bare,

und wirt dîn schame harte grôz

and becomes thy shame very great

die dû von schulden danne hâst

which thou by right then hast

unde nacket vor mir stâst.

and naked before me standest.

ich binde dir bein und arme:

I bind for-thee legs and arms:

1090 ob dich dîn lîp erbarme,

if thee thy person should-pity,

so bedenke disen smerzen:

then consider this pain:

ich snîde dich zem herzen

I cut thee to-the heart

und brich ez lebende ûz dir.

and break it living out-of thee.

fröuwelîn, nû sage mir

little-lady, now tell me

1095 wie dîn muot dar umbe stê.

how thy spirit there about stands.

ezn geschach nie kinde alsô wê,

it happened never to-a-child so painfully,

als dir muoz von mir geschehen.

as to-thee must from me happen.

daz ich ez tuon sol unde sehen,

that I it do shall and see,

dâ hân ich michel angst zuo:

there have I great dread to:

nu gedenke selbe ouch dar zuo.

now think thyself also there to.

1100

geriuwet ez dich eins hâres breit,

(if)-ruet it thee a hair's breadth,

sô hân ich mîn arbeit

so have I my toil

und dû dînen lîp verlorn.'

and thou thy body lost.'

vil tûre wart sî aber besworn,

very solemnly was she again adjured,

sin erkante sich vil stæte,

she-not knew herself very constant,

1105

daz sî sichs abe tæte.

that she herself-of-it away should-do.

Diu maget lachende sprach,

The maiden laughing said,

wan sî sich des wol versach,

for she herself of-that well expected,

ir hülfe des tages der tôt

her would-help of-that day the death

ûzer werltlicher nôte,

out-of worldly distress,

1110

'got lône iu, lieber herre,

'God reward you, dear lord,

daz ir mir alsô verre

that you to-me so fully

hânt die wârheit gesaget.

have the truth told.

entriuwen ich bin ein teil verzaget:

in-faith I am a bit daunted:

mir ist ein zwîvel geschehen.

to-me is a doubt befallen.

1115

ich wil iu rehte bejehen

I will to-you rightly confess

wie der zwîvel ist getân

how the doubt is fashioned

den ich nû gewonnen hân.

which I now gotten have.

ich fürhte daz unser arbeit

I fear that our toil

1120 gar von iuwer zageheit

wholly from your faint-heartedness

under wegen belibe.

under ways should-remain(-undone).

iuwer rede gezæme eim wîbe.

your speech would-befit a woman.

ir sint eines hasen genôz.

you are a hare's equal.

iuwer angest ist ein teil ze grôz

your dread is a bit too great

1125 dar umbe daz ich sterben sol.

there about that I die shall.

dêswâr ir handelnt ez niht wol

truly you handle it not well

mit iuwer grôzen meisterschaft.

with your great mastery.

ich bin ein wîp und hân die kraft:

I am a woman and have the strength:

geturrent ir mich snîden,

(if)-dare you me cut,

1130 ich getar ez wol erlîden.

I dare it well endure.

die engestliche arbeit

the fearful hardship

die ir mir vor hânt geseit,

which you to-me before have told,

die hân ich wol ân iuch vernomen.

that have I well without you understood.

zwâre ichn wære her niht komen,

truly I would-have hither not come,

wan daz ich mich weste

except that I myself knew

des muotes alsô veste

of-the spirit so firm

daz ich ez wol mac dulden.

that I it well can endure.

mir ist bî iuvern hulden

to-me is by your favor

diu bræde varwe gar benomen

the frail color wholly taken-away

und ein muot alsô vester komen

and a spirit so firmer come

daz ich als engestliche stân

that I as anxiously stand

als ich ze tanze sûle gân:

as I to a-dance should go:

wan dehein nôt sô grôz ist

for no distress so great is

diu sich in eines tages frist

which itself in one day's term

an mîme lîbe geenden mac,

on my body end can,

mich endunke daz der eine tac

me unless-seems that the one day

genuoc tiure sî gegeben

quite dearly be given

umbe daz êwige leben

for the eternal life

daz dâ niemer zergât.

which there never passes-away.

1135

1140

1145

- 1150 iu enmac, als mîn muot stât,
to-you can, as my spirit stands,
 an mir niht gewerren.
on me nothing trouble.
 getrûwent ir mînem herren
(if)-trust you to-my lord
 sînen gesunt wider geben
his health back to-give
 und mir daz êwige leben,
and to-me the eternal life,
- 1155 durch got daz tuont enzît:
for God's-sake that do in-time:
 lânt sehen welch meister ir sît.
let see what master you are.
 mich reizet vaste dar zuo.
me (it)-urges strongly there to.
 ich weiz wol durch wen ich ez tuo:
I know well for whom I it do:
 in des namen ez geschehen sol,
in whose name it happen shall,
- 1160 der erkennet dienst harte wol
he knows service very well
 und lât sîn ungelônnet niht.
and leaves it unrewarded not.
 ich weiz wol daz er selbe giht,
I know well that he himself says,
 swer grôzen dienst leiste,
whoever great service renders,
 des lôn sî ouch der meiste.
of-that reward he also the greatest.

dâ von sô sol ich disen tôt

there from so shall I this death

1165

hân für eine süeze nô

hold for a sweet distress

nâch sus gewissem lône.

after such certain reward.

liez ich die himelkrône,

should-leave I the heaven-crown,

sô het ich alwæren sin,

so bad I foolish mind,

wand ich doch lihtes künnes bin.'

for I indeed of-humble kin am.'

1170

Nu vernam er daz sî wære

Now perceived he that she were

genuog unwandelbære,

quite unchangeable,

und fuorte sî wider dan

and led her back thence

hin zuo dem siechen man

away to the sick man

und sprach zuo ir herren

and spoke to her lord

1175

'uns kan daz niht gewerren,

'us can that not trouble,

iuwer maget ensî vollen guot.

your maiden (provided)-be fully good.

nû hânt frœlichen muot:

now have joyful spirit:

ich mache iuch schiere gesunt.'

I make you soon healthy.'

hin fuorte er sî zestunt

away led he her at-once

1180

in sîn heimlich gemach,

into his private room,

da es ir herre niht ensach,
where it her lord not saw,

und beslôz im vor die tür
and closed on-him before the door

und warf einen rigel für:
and threw a bolt across:

1185 er enwolte in niht sehen lân
he would him not see let

wie ir ende solte ergân
how her end should come-about

in einer kemenâten,
in a chamber,

die er vil wol berâten
which he very well furnished

mit sîner arzenîe vant.
with his medicine found.

1190 er hiez die maget alzehant
he bade the maiden at-once

abe ziehen diu kleit.
off to-take the clothes.

des was sî frô und gemeit:
of-that was she glad and merry:

sî zarte diu kleider in der nât.
she tore the clothes at the seam.

schiere stuont sî âne wât
quickly stood she without garment

1195 und wart nacket unde blôz:
and became naked and bare:

sî schamte sich niht eins hâres grôz.
she shamed herself not a hair's size.

Heinrich Looks Through the Wall

VIII

The master, seeing how fair she is, nearly loses heart, binds her on a table, and whets his knife. Heinrich hears the stone, finds a hole in the wall and sees her naked and bound, and his mind turns: he will not buy one day against the will of God. He knocks, is let in, pays the silver, and has her freed. The maiden rages and calls him a world-coward who has robbed her of the crown; he takes it as a knight should and rides home to the country's scorn.

Dô sî der meister ane sach

When her the master upon looked

in sîme herzen er des jach

in his heart he of-this said

daz schoener crêatiure

that a-fairer creature

al der werlte wære tiure.

in-all the world were rare.

sô sêre erbarmte sî in,

so sorely grieved she him,

daz im daz herze und der sin

that to-him the heart and the mind

vil nâch was daran verzaget.

very nearly was thereat undone.

nû ersach diu guote maget

now saw the good maiden

einen hôhen tisch dâ stân:

a high table there stand:

dâ hiez si der meister ûf gân.

there bade her the master up go.

dar ûf er sî vil vaste bant,

there upon he her very fast bound,

1200

1205

und begunde nemen in die hant
and began to-take into the hand

ein scharpfez mezzet daz dâ lac,
a sharp knife that there lay,

1210 des er ze solhen dingen pfleg.
which he for such things used.

ez was lang unde breit,
it was long and broad,

wan daz ez sô wol niht ensneit
except that it so well not cut

als im wære liep gewesen
as to-him would-have dear been

dô sî niht solte genesen,
since she not should survive,

1215 dô erbarmete in ir nôt,
then grieved him her distress,

und wolte ir sanfte tuon den tôt.
and would to-her gently make the death.

Nû lac dâ bî in ein
Now lay there by them a

harte guot wetzestein.
very good whetstone.

da begunde erz ane strîchen
there began he-it upon to-draw

1220 harte müezeclîchen,
very leisurely,

da bî wetzen. daz erhôrte,
there by to-whet. that heard,

der ir fröude stôrte,
he-who her joy destroyed,

der arme Heinrich hin für
the poor Heinrich out forth

dâ er stuont vor der tür,
where he stood before the door,

und erbarmte in vil sêre

and grieved him very sorely

1225

daz er sî niemer mêre

that he her never more

lebende solte gesehen.

living should see.

nu begunde er suochen unde spehen,

now began he to-seek and to-peer,

unze daz er durch die want

until that he through the wall

ein loch gânde vant,

a hole going found,

1230

und ersach sî durch die schrunden

and saw her through the crack

nacket und gebunden.

naked and bound.

Ir lîp der was vil minneclich.

Her body it was very lovely.

nû sach er sî an unde sich,

now looked he her at and himself,

und gewan einen niuwen muot.

and got a new spirit.

1235

in dûhte dô daz niht guot

to-him seemed then that not good

des er ê gedâht hâte,

which he before thought bad,

und verkêrte vil gedrâte

and changed very swiftly

sîn altez gemüete

his old spirit

in eine niuwe güete.

into a new goodness.

1240

Nû er sî alse schœne sach,
Now he her so fair saw,

wider sich selben er dô sprach
toward himself self he then spoke

‘dû hâst einen tumben gedanc,
‘thou hast a foolish thought,

daz dû sunder sînen danc
that thou without his will

1245 gerst ze lebenne einen tac
desire to live a day

wider den niemen niht enmac.
against whom no-one anything can.

du enweist ouch rehte waz dû tuost,
thou knowest-not also rightly what thou dost,

sît dû benamen sterben muost,
since thou indeed die must,

daz dû diz lesterliche leben
that thou this disgraceful life

1250 daz dir got hât gegeben
which to-thee God has given

niht vil willeclîchen treist
not very willingly bear

unde ouch dar zuo enweist
and also there to knowest-not

ob dich diss kindes tôt ernert.
whether thee this child's death saves.

swaz dir got hât beschert,
whatever to-thee God has allotted,

1255 daz lâ dir allez geschehen.
that let to-thee all happen.

ich enwil diss kindes tôt niht sehen.’
I will this child's death not see.’

Des bewag er sich zehant

Of-that resolved he himself at-once

und begunde bôzen an die want:

and began to-knock on the wall:

er hiez sich lâzen dar in.

he bade himself let there in.

der meister sprach 'ich enbin

the master said I am

1260

nû niht müezic dar zuo

now not free there to

daz ich iu iht ûf tuo'

that I to-you at-all open do'

'nein, herre meister, gesprechent mich.'

'no, lord master, speak-with me.'

'herre, sprach er, jâ enmac ich.

'lord, said he, indeed can-not I.

beitent unz daz ditz ergê.'

wait until that this be-done.'

1265

'nein herre meister, gesprecht mich ê.'

'no lord master, speak-with me first.'

'nû sagent mirz her durch die want'

'now say to-me-it hither through the wall'

'jâ ist ez niht alsô gewant.'

'indeed is it not so disposed.'

Zehant dô liez er in dar in.

At-once then let he him there in.

dô gie der arme Heinrich hin

then went the poor Heinrich thither

1270

dâ er die maget gebunden sach.

where he the maiden bound saw.

zuo dem meister er dô sprach

to the master he then spoke

'ditz kint ist alsô wünneclich:

'this child is so delightful:

zwâre jâ enmac ich
truly indeed can I

1275 sînen tôht niht gesehen.
its death not see.

gotes wille müeze an mir geschehen:
God's will may on me happen:

wir suln sî wider ûf lân.
we shall her again up let.

als ich mit iu gedinget hân,
as I with you bargained have,

daz silber daz wil ich iu geben.
the silver that will I to-you give.

1280 ir sult die maget lâzen leben.'
you shall the maiden let live.'

Dô diu maget rehte ersach
When the maiden rightly saw

daz ir ze sterbenne niht geschach,
that to-her to die not happened,

dâ was ir muot beswæret mite.
there was her spirit burdened with.

sî brach ir zuht und ir site:
she broke her breeding and her manner:

1285 ze grimme roufte sî sich:
in fury tore she herself:

ir gebærde wart sô jâmerlich
her bearing became so piteous

daz sî niemen hete gesehen,
that her no-one had seen,

im wære ze weinenne geschehen.
to-him would-have to weep befallen.

Vil bitterlîchen sî schrê
Very bitterly she cried

1290 'wê mir vil armen unde ouwê!
'woe to-me very poor and alas!

wie sol ez mir nû ergân,

how shall it for-me now go,

muoz ich alsus verlorn hân

must I thus lost have

die rîchen himelkrône?

the rich heaven-crown?

diu wære mir ze lône

which were to-me as reward

gegeben umbe dise nôt.

given for this suffering.

nû bin ich alrêst tât.

now am I first-of-all dead.

ouwê, gewaltiger Krist,

alas, mighty Christ,

waz êren uns benomen ist,

what honor from-us taken is,

mînem herren unde mir!

from-my lord and me!

nu enbirt er und ich enbir

now lacks he and I lack

der êren der uns was gedâht.

the honor which to-us was intended.

ob diz wære vollebrâht

if this were accomplished

sô wære ime der lîp genesen,

so would-have to-him the body healed,

und müeste ich iemer sælic wesen.'

and must I ever blessed be.'

Sus bat si gnuoc umb den tât.

Thus begged she enough for the death.

dô wart ir nie dernâch sô nôt,

then was to-her never thereafter so urgent,

sî verlüre gar ir bete.

she lost wholly her prayer.

1295

1300

1305

dô niemen durch sî dô niht tete,
when no-one for her then anything did,

dô huop sî an ein schelten.
then began she on a scolding.

1310 sî sprach 'ich muoz engelten
she said 'I must pay-for

mînes herren zageheit.
of-my lord's cowardice.

mir hânt die liute misseseit:
to-me have the people mis-told:

daz hân ich selbe wol ersehen.
that have I myself well seen.

ich hôrte ie die liute jehen,
I heard ever the people say,

1315 ir wærent biderbe unde guot
you were worthy and good

und hetent vesten mannes muot:
and had firm man's spirit:

sô helfe mir got, sî hânt gelogen.
so help me God, they have lied.

diu werlt was ie an iu betrogen:
the world was ever in you deceived:

ir wârent ie al iuwer tage
you were ever all your days

1320 und sint ouch noch ein werltzage.
and are also still a world-coward.

des nim ich wol dâ bî war:
of-that take I well there by heed:

daz ich doch liden getar,
that I indeed to-suffer dare,

dazn turrent ir niht dulden.
that dare you not endure.

herre, von welhen schulden

lord, from what cause

erschrâkent îr dô man mich bant?

were-frightened you when one me bound?

1325

ez was doch ein dickiu want

it was indeed a thick wall

enzwischen iu unde mir.

between you and me.

herre mîn, geturrent ir

lord my, dare you

einen frömden tôt niht vertragen?

a stranger's death not bear?

ich wil iu geheizen unde sagen

I will to-you promise and say

1330

daz iu niemen niht entuot,

that to-you no-one anything does,

und ist iu nütze unde guot.'

and is for-you useful and good.'

Swie vil sî flüeche unde bete

However much she curses and prayers

unde ouch scheltens getete,

and also of-scolding made,

daz enmohte ir niht frum wesen:

that could to-her not profitable be:

1335

sî muoste iedoch genesen.

she must nevertheless live.

swaz dô scheltens ergie,

whatever then of-scolding passed,

der arme Heinrich ez enpfie

the poor Heinrich it received

als ein frumer ritter sol,

as a worthy knight should,

tugentlichen unde wol,

virtuously and well,

1340

dem schœner zûhte niht gebrast.

to-whom of-fair breeding nothing lacked.

und dô der gnâdelôse gast

and when the grace-less guest

sîne maget wider kleite

his maiden again clothed

und den arzât bereite

and the physician paid

1345 als er gedinget hâte,

as he bargained bad,

dô fuor er gedrâte

then fared he swiftly

wider heim ze lande.

back home to country.

swie wol er dô erkande

however well he then knew

daz er dâ heime funde

that he there at-home would-find

1350 mit gemeinem munde

with common mouth

niuwan laster unde spot,

nothing-but reproach and mockery,

daz liez er liuterlîch an got.

that left he wholly to God.

The Healing, and the Wedding

IX

God, who reads every heart, has tried them as he tried Job, and on the road restores Heinrich to what he was twenty years before. His kinsmen ride three days to meet him and believe only their own eyes; the steward and his wife weep and laugh at once, and Swabia receives him with gifts. He grows richer than before, turns it all to God, gives the steward the clearing and its people, and when his kin cannot agree on a marriage, takes the free maiden to wife; after a long life they possess the eternal kingdom.

Nû hete sich diu guote magt

Now had herself the good maiden

sô verweinet und verklagt,

so wept-out and lamented-out,

vil nâhe hin unz an den tôt.

very nearly thither up at the death.

do erkande ir triuwe unde ir nôt

then knew her faithfulness and her distress

cordis spêculâtor,

of-the-heart beholder,

vor dem deheines herzen tor

before whom of-no heart the-gate

fûrnames niht beslozen ist.

utterly at-all closed is.

1355

- 1360 sît er durch sînen sûezen list
since he through his sweet art
 an in beiden des geruochte
on them both of-that deigned
 daz er sî versuochte
that he them tested
 reht alsô volleclichen
just as fully
 sam Jôben den rîchen,
as Job the rich,
- 1365 do erzeugte der heilige Krist
then showed the holy Christ
 wie liep im triuwe und erbermde ist,
how dear to-him faithfulness and mercy is,
 und schiet sî dô beide
and parted them then both
 von allem ir leide
from all their sorrow
 und machete in dô zestunt
and made him then at-once
- 1370 reine unde wol gesunt.
clean and fully healthy.
 Alsus bezzerte sich
Thus mended himself
 der guote herre Heinrich
the good lord Heinrich
 daz er ûf sînem wege
that he on his way
 von unsers herren gotes pflege
by our lord God's care
- 1375 harte schœne worden was,
very fair become was,

daz er vil gar genas

that he very wholly recovered

und was als vor zweinzic jâren.

and was as before twenty years.

do si sus erfröuwet wâren,

when they thus gladdened were,

do enbôt erz heim ze lande

then announced he-it home to country

den die er erkande

to-those whom he knew

der sælden und der güete

of-the fortune and of-the goodness

daz sî in ir gemüete

that they in their spirit

sîns gelückes wæren frô.

of-his good-fortune were glad.

von schulden muosten sî dô

by right must they then

von den genâden fröude hân

from the graces joy have

die got hâte an ime getân.

which God had on him done.

Sîne friunt die besten

His friends the best

die sîne kunft westen,

who his coming knew,

die riten unde giengen

they rode and went

durch daz sî in enpfiegen

so that they him should-receive

gegen im wol drîe tage.

toward him fully three days.

1380

1385

1390

si engeloubten niemens sage
they believed no-one's report

wan ir selber ougen.
except their own eyes.

sî kurn diu gotes tougen
they saw the God's mystery

1395 an sîme schoenen lîbe.
on his fair body.

dem meiger und sînem wîbe
to-the steward and to-his woman

den mac man wol gelouben,
them may one well believe,

man welle sî rehtes rouben,
one unless-would them of-right rob,

daz sî dâ heime niht beliben.
that they there at-home not remained.

1400 sî ist iemer ungeschriben,
it is ever unwritten,

diu fröude die sî hâten,
the joy which they had,

wan sî got hete berâten
for them God had provided

mit lieber ougen weide:
with dear eyes' pasture:

die gâben in dô beide
that gave to-them then both

1405 ir tohter unde ir herre.
their daughter and their lord.

ez enwart nie fröude merre
there was never joy greater

danne in beiden was geschehen,
than to-them both had happened,

dô sî hâten gesehen

when they had seen

daz sî gesunt wâren.

that they healthy were.

si enwesten wie gebâren.

they knew-not how to-behave.

1410

ir gruoꝝ wart spæhe undersniten

their greeting was artfully interspersed

mit vil seltsænen siten:

with very strange manners:

ir herzeliebe wart alsô grôz

their heart's-love became so great

daz in daz lachen begôz

that to-them the laughter drenched

der regen von den ougen.

the rain from the eyes.

1415

diu rede ist âne lougen:

the account is without denial:

sî kusten ir tohter munt

they kissed their daughter's mouth

etewaz mê dan drî stunt.

somewhat more than three times.

Do enpfingen sî die Swâbe

Then received them the Swabians

mit lobelîcher gâbe:

with praiseworthy gift:

1420

daz was ir willeclîcher gruoꝝ.

that was their willing greeting.

got weiz wol, den Swâben muoz

God knows well, to-the Swabians must

ieglich biderber man jehen,

every worthy man acknowledge,

der sî dâ heime hât gesehen,

who them there at-home has seen,

- 1425 daz bezzers willen niene wart.
that of-better will never was.
- als in an sîner heimvart
as him on his home-journey
- sîn lantliut enphienge,
his country-folk received,
- wie ez dar nâch ergienge,
how it there after went,
- waz mag ich dâ von sprechen mê?
what can I there of say more?
- 1430 wan er wart rîcher vil dan ê
except he became richer much than before
- des guotes und der êren.
of-the goods and of-the honors.
- daz begunde er allez kêren
that began he all to-turn
- stæteclichen hin ze gote,
constantly forth to God,
- und warte sîme gebote
and heeded his commandment
- 1435 baz danne er ê tæte.
better than he before did.
- des ist sîn êre stæte.
therefore is his honor constant.
- Der meiger und diu meigerin
The steward and the steward's-wife
- die heten ouch vil wol umb in
they had also very well toward him
- verdienet êre unde guot.
earned honor and goods.
- 1440 ouch het er niht sô valschen muot,
also had he not so false a-spirit,
- sî hetenz harte wol bewant.
they had-it very well bestowed.

er gap in ze eigen daz lant,
he gave to-them as property the land,

daz breite geriute,
the broad clearing,

die erde und die liute,
the earth and the people,

dâ er dâ siecher ûffe lac.
where he there sick upon lay.

1445

sîner gemaheln er dô pflac
of-his betrothed he then cared

mit guote und mit gemache
with goods and with ease

und mit aller slahte sache
and with every kind-of thing

als sîner frouwen oder baz:
as of-his lady or better:

daz reht gebôt ime ouch daz.
the right commanded to-him also that.

1450

Nu begunden im die wîsen
Now began to-him the wise

râten unde prîsen
to-counsel and to-commend

umb êlîchen hîrât.
about lawful marriage.

ungesamnet was der rât.
unagreed was the counsel.

er seite in dô sînen muot:
he told to-them then his spirit:

1455

er wolte, diuhte ez sî guot,
he would, should-seem it to-them good,

nâch sînen friunden senden
after his friends send

und die rede mit in enden,
and the matter with them settle,

swar sî ime rieten.

wherever they to-him counseled.

1460 biten unde gebieten

to-ask and to-command

hiez er allenthalben dar

bade he on-all-sides thither

die sînes wortes nâmen war.

those-who of-his word should-take heed.

do er sî alle dar gewan,

when he them all thither got,

beide mâge unde man,

both kinsmen and vassals,

1465 dô tet er in die rede kunt.

then made he to-them the matter known.

nû sprach ein gemeiner munt,

now spoke a common mouth,

ez wære reht unde zît.

it were right and time.

hie huop sich ein michel strît

here raised itself a great dispute

an dem râte under in:

in the counsel among them:

1470 dirre riet her, der ander hin,

this-one counseled hither, the other thither,

als ie die liute tâten

as ever the people did

dâ sî dû solten râten.

where they there should counsel.

Do ir rât was sô mislich,

When their counsel was so various,

dô sprach der arme Heinrich

then spoke the poor Heinrich

‘iu ist allen wol kunt

‘to-you is all well known

1475

daz ich vor kurzer stunt,

that I before a-short hour,

was vil ungenæme,

was very unwelcome,

den liuten widerzæme.

to-the people loathsome.

nu enschiuht mich weder man noch wîp:

now shuns me neither man nor woman:

mir hât gegeben gesunden lîp

to-me has given a-healthy body

1480

unsers herren gebot.

our lord's command.

nû râtet mir alle durch got,

now counsel me all for God,

von dem ich die genâde hân,

from whom I the grace have,

die mir got hât getân,

which to-me God has done,

daz ich gesunt worden bin,

that I healthy become am,

1485

wie ichz verschulde wider in.’

how I-it may-repay toward him.’

Sî sprâchen ‘nement einen muot

They said ‘take one spirit

daz im lîp unde guot

that to-him body and goods

iemer undertænic sî.’

ever subject be.’

1490 sîn trûtgemahele stuont dâ bî,
bis dear-betrothed stood there by,

die er vil gütlich ane sach.
whom he very kindly upon looked.

er umbevienc sî unde sprach
he embraced her and spoke

‘iu ist allen wol gesagt
‘to-you is all well told

daz ich von dirre guoten magt
that I from this good maiden

1495 mînen gesunt wider hân,
my health again have,

die ir hie sehent bî mir stân.
whom you here see by me stand.

nû ist sî frî als ich dâ bin:
now is she free as I there am:

nû ræt mir aller mîn sin
now counsels me all my mind

daz ich sî ze wîbe neme.
that I her to woman take.

1500 got gebe daz ez mir gezeme:
God grant that it to-me befit:

sô wil ich sî ze wîbe hân.
so will I her to woman have.

zwâre, mac daz niht ergân,
truly, (if)-can that not come-about,

sô wil ich sterben âne wîp,
so will I die without woman,

wan ich êre unde lîp
for I honor and life

1505 hân von ir schulden.
have by her doing.

bî unsers herren hulden

by our lord's favor

wil ich iuch biten alle

will I you ask all

daz ez iu wol gevalle.'

that it to-you well please.'

Nû sprâchens alle gelîche,

Now said-they all alike,

bêde arm und rîche,

both poor and rich,

1510

ez wære ein michel fuoge.

it were a great fitness.

dâ wâren pfaffen gnuoge:

there were priests enough:

die gâben si ime ze wîbe.

they gave her to-him to woman.

nâch sûezem lanclîbe

after a-sweet long-life

do besâzen sî gelîche

then possessed they alike

1515

daz êwige rîche.

the eternal kingdom.

als müeze ez uns allen

so may it to-us all

ze jungest gevallen.

at last fall.

der lôn den sî dâ nâmen,

the reward which they there took,

1520 des helfe uns got. âmen.

of-that help us God. amen.

WERNHER DER GARTENÆRE

Meier Helmbrecht

Farmer Helmbrecht

The Cap, and the Boy Who Wore It

I

A peasant's son wears his long fair hair under an embroidered cap, which the poet reads like a book: at the right ear the siege of Troy and Aeneas' escape, on the left Charles and Roland against the heathen, behind Helche's sons falling at Ravenna, and before all a dance of knights and ladies sewn in bright silk. A runaway nun made it, paid in a cow by his sister Gotelint and in cheese and eggs by his mother. They dress him in linen, a fur, and a sword, and still he wants a jerkin over all.

Einer saget waz er gesiht,

One tells what he sees,

der ander saget waz im geschiht,

the other tells what to-him happens,

der dritte von minne,

the third of love,

der vierde von gewinne,

the fourth of gain,

der fünfte von grôzem guote,

the fifth of great goods,

der sehste von hôhem muote:

the sixth of high spirit:

hie wil ich sagen waz mir geschach,

here will I tell what to-me happened,

daz ich mit mînen ougen sach.

that I with my eyes saw.

ich sach, deist sicherlîchen wâr,

I saw, that-is certainly true,

eins gebûren sun, der truoc ein hâr,

a peasant's son, he wore a head-of-hair,

daz was reide unde val;

it was curly and blond;

5

10

ob der ahsel hin ze tal
over the shoulder forth to below

mit lenge ez volleclichen gie.
with length it fully went.

in eine hûben er ez vie,
in a cap he it caught,

15 diu was von bilden wæhe.
it was of figures splendid.

ich wæne, ieman gesæhe
I think, no-one might-have-seen

sô mangan vogel ûf hûben.
so many-a bird on caps.

siteche unde tûben
parrots and doves

die wâren aldar ûf genât.
they were thereon up sewn.

20 welt ir nû hœren waz dâ stât?
will you now hear what there stands?

Ein meier der hiez Helmbrecht:
A steward he was-called Helmbrecht:

des sun was der selbe kneht
his son was the same lad

von dem daz mære ist erhaben.
of whom the tale is begun.

sam den vater nante man den knaben;
like the father named one the lad;

25 si bêde hiezen Helmbrecht.
they both were-called Helmbrecht.

mit einer kurzen rede sleht

with a short speech plain

künde ich iu daz mære

would-tell I to-you the tale

waz ûf der hûben wære

what on the cap were

wunders erziuget.

of-wonder wrought.

daz mære iuch niht betriuget;

the tale you not deceives;

ich sage ez niht nâch wâne.

I tell it not by hope.

hinden von dem spâne,

behind from the back-hair,

nâch der scheitel gegen dem schopfe

along the parting toward the forelock

rehte enmitten ûf dem kopfe,

right in-the-middle on the head,

dez lûn mit vogelen was bezogen,

the cap-top with birds was covered,

reht' als si wæren dar geflogen

right' as they were thither flown

ûz dem Spehtharte.

out-of the Spessart.

ûf gebûren swarte

on peasant's scalp

kam nie bezzer houbetdach

came never better head-covering

dan man ûf Helmbrehte sach.

than one on Helmbreht saw.

30

35

40

dem selben geutôren

to-the same country-fool

was gegen dem zeswen ôren

was toward the right ear

ûf die hûben genât

on the cap sewn

(welt ir nû hœren waz dâ stât?),

(will you now hear what there stands?),

45 wie Troye wart besezzen,

how Troy was besieged,

dô Pârîs der vermezzen

when Paris the bold

dem kûnege ûz Kriechen nam sîn wîp,

from-the king out-of Greece took his woman,

diu im was liep als sîn lip,

who to-him was dear as his life,

und wie man Troye gewan

and how one Troy won

50 und Ênêas von danne entran

and Aeneas from thence escaped

ûf daz mer in den kielien

upon the sea in the keels

unde wie die türne vielen

and how the towers fell

und manic steinmûre.

and many-a stone-wall.

ouwê daz ie gebûre

alas that ever a-peasant

55 sölhe hûben solte tragen

such cap should wear

dâ von sô vil ist ze sagen!

there of so much is to tell!

welt ir nû hoeren mê

will you now hear more

waz anderhalp der hûben stê

what on-the-other-side of-the cap stands

mit sîden erfüllet?

with silk filled?

daz mære iuch niht betrüllet.

the tale you not befools.

60

ez stuont gegen der winstern hant

it stood toward the left hand

künic Karle und Ruolant,

king Charles and Roland,

Turpîn und Oliviere,

Turpin and Oliver,

die nôtgestalden viere,

the battle-comrades four,

waz die wonders mit ir kraft

what they of-wonder with their strength

65

worhten gegen der heidenschaft.

wrought against the heathendom.

Provenz unde Arle

Provence and Arles

betwanc der künic Karle

subdued the king Charles

mit manheit und mit witzen;

with manhood and with wits;

er betwanc daz lant Galitzen:

he subdued the land Galicia:

70

daz wâren allez heiden ê.

they were all heathens before.

welt ir nû hoeren waz hie stê
will you now hear what here stands

von ener nestel her an dise
from yonder lace hither to this

(ez ist wâr daz ich iu lise)
(it is true that I to-you read)

75 zwischen den ôren hinden?
between the ears behind?

von frouwen Helchen kinden,
of lady Helche's children,

wie die wîlen vor Raben
how they formerly before Ravenna

den lîp in stürmen vloren haben,
the life in battles lost have,

dô si sluoc her Witege,
when them slew lord Witege,

80 der küene und der unsitege,
the bold and the unruly,

und Diethern von Berne.
and Dietber of Bern.

noch müget ir hoeren gerne
still may you hear gladly

waz der narre und der gouch
what the fool and the dolt

truoc ûf sîner hûben ouch.
wore on his cap also.

ez het der gotes tumbē

it had the God's simpleton

85

vor an dem lüne alumbē

in-front on the cap-top all-around

von dem zeswen ôren hin

from the right ear along

unz an daz tenke, des ich bin

until to the left, of-which I am

mit wârheit wol bewæret

with truth well assured

(nû hœret wie'z sich mæret),

(now hear how-it itself spreads),

90

man möht' ez gerne schouwen,

one might' it gladly behold,

von rittern und von frouwen,

of knights and of ladies,

ouch was dâ niht überhaben,

also was there nothing omitted,

beidiu von mägden und von knaben

both of maidens and of lads

vor an dem lüne stuont ein tanz

in-front on the cap-top stood a dance

95

genât mit sîden, diu was glanz.

sewn with silk, which was bright.

ie zwischen zwein frouwen stuont,

ever between two ladies stood,

als si noch bî tanze tuont,

as they still at dance do,

ein ritter an ir hende:

a knight at their bands:

- 100 dort an enem ende
there at yonder end
 ie zwischen zwein meiden gie
ever between two maidens went
 ein knabe der ir hende vie.
a lad who their hands took.
 dâ stuonden videlære bî.
there stood fiddlers by.
 Nû hœret wie diu hûbe sî
Now hear how the cap is
- 105 geprüefet Helmbrehte,
devised for-Helmbreht,
 dem tumben ræzen knehte.
for-the foolish fierce lad.
 noch habet ir alles niht vernomen
still have you all not heard
 wie diu hûbe her sî komen.
how the cap hither is come.
 die nâte ein nunne gemeit.
it sewed a nun merry.
- 110 diu nunne durch ir hübscheit
the nun for her courtliness
 ûz ir zelle was entrunnen.
out-of her cell had escaped.
 ez geschach der selben nunnen
it happened to-the same nun
 als vil maneger noch geschiht;
as to-very many-a-one still happens;
 mîn ouge der vil dicke siht
my eye of-them very often sees
- 115 die daz nider teil verrâten hât:
whom the lower part betrayed has:
 dâ von daz ober mit schanden stât.
there of the upper with disgrace stands.

Helmbrehtes swester Gotelint,

Helmbreht's sister Gotelint,

der nunnan ein genæmez rint

to-the nun a pleasing beast

gap si ze kuchenspîse.

gave she as kitchen-fare.

si was ir werkes wîse;

she was of-her work skilled;

sie diente ez wol mit næte

she earned it well with sewing

an der hûben und an der wæte.

on the cap and on the garment.

Dô Gotelint gap dise kuo,

When Gotelint gave this cow,

nû hœret waz diu muoter tuo.

now hear what the mother does.

diu gap sô vil der zweier

she gave so much of-the two

der nunnan, kæse und eier,

to-the nun, cheese and eggs,

die wîle si ze revende gie,

the while she to refectory went,

daz si die selben zît nie

that she the same time never

sô manic ei zerclucte

so many-an egg cracked

noch kæse versmucte.

nor cheese hid-away.

Noch gap diu swester mêre

Still gave the sister more

dem bruoder durch sîn êre

to-the brother for his honor

kleine wîze lînât,

fine white linen,

120

125

130

daz lützel iemen bezzer hât.

that scarcely anyone better has.

135 diu was sô kleine gespunnen,

it was so finely spun,

ab dem tuoche entrunnen

from the cloth ran-away

wol siben webære

fully seven weavers

ê ez volwebet wære.

before it fully-woven were.

ouch gap im diu muoter

also gave to-him the mother

140 daz nie seit sô guoter

that never silk so good

versniten wart mit schære

cut was with shears

von keinem snîdære,

by any tailor,

und einen belz dar under

and a fur there under

von sô getânem kunder

of so fashioned creature

145 daz ûf dem velde izzet gras;

which on the field eats grass;

niht sô wîzes in dem lande was.

nothing so white in the land was.

dar nâch gap im daz getriuwe wîp

there after gave to-him the faithful woman

ir lieben sune an sînen lîp

her dear son on his body

kettenwambîs unde swert;

chain-doublet and sword;

150 des was der jungelinc wol wert.

of-it was the youth well worthy.

noch gap si dem selben knaben

still gave she to-the same lad

zwei gewant, diu muost' er haben,

two garments, which must' he have,

gnîpen unde taschen breit;

knife and pouch broad;

er ist noch ræze der si treit.

he is still fierce who them wears.

Dô si gekleidet het den knaben,

When she clothed had the lad,

155

dô sprach er: «muoter, ich muoz haben

then said he: «mother, I must have

dar über einen warkus:

there over a jerkin:

und solt' ich des belîben sus,

and should' I of-it go-without thus,

sô wære ich gar verswachet.

then were I quite abased.

der sol ouch sîn gemachet,

it shall also be made,

160

als dîn ouge den an gesiht,

when thy eye it at looks,

daz dir dîn herze des vergiht,

that to-thee thy heart of-it avows,

dû habest des kindes êre,

thou hast the child's honor,

swar ich der lande kêre.»

wherever I of-the lands turn.»

His Clothes, and the Horse He Asks For

II

His mother sells many a hen and egg for hose and buskins, and the blue coat is told button by button: gilt buttons down the spine, crystal at the breast, bells at the sleeve-seam ringing through the women's ears when he leaps in the dance. Dressed, Helmbrecht asks his father for a horse to carry him to court. The father offers one but begs him to stay, since court ways are hard on a man not bred to them; the boy scorns the plow and Ruprecht's daughter, and hears of hunger, mockery, and a robbed peasant taking his life.

- 165 Si het noch in den valden
She had still in the folds
ein röckelin behalden:
a little-coat kept:
des wart si âne leider
of-it became she bereft alas
durch des sunes kleider.
for the son's clothes.
si koufte im tuoch, daz was blâ.
she bought for-him cloth, that was blue.
- 170 weder hie noch anderswâ
neither here nor elsewhere
truoc nie dehein meier
wore ever any steward
einen roc der zweier eier
a coat that of-two eggs
wære bezzer dan der sîn;
were better than the his;
daz habt bî den triuwen mîn.
that hold by the faith my.

er kunde in tugende lêren

he could him virtues teach

175

und hôhen lop gemêren

and high praise increase

der im daz het gerâten.

who to-him that had advised.

nâch dem rûckebrâten

along the back-roast

von der gûrtl unz in den nac

from the belt up to the neck

ein knöpfel an dem andern lac;

one button on the other lay;

180

diu wâren rôet vergoldet.

they were red gilded.

ob ir nû hœren woldet

if you now hear would

von dem rocke fûrbaz,

of the coat further,

durch iuwer liebe sagte ich daz.

for your love would-tell I that.

dâ daz gollier an daz kin

where the collar to the chin

185

reichte, unz an die rîngen hin

reached, up to the buckles along

diu knöpfel wâren silberwîz.

the buttons were silver-white.

ez hât selten solhen vlîz

there has seldom such care

an sînen warkus geleit

on his jerkin laid

dehein gebûre der in treit,

any peasant who it wears,

190

noch sô kostelîchiu werc,

nor so costly work,

zwischen Höhensteine und Haldenberg.

between Höhenstein and Haldenberg.

seht wie iu daz gevalle:

see how to-you that pleases:

driu knöpfel von kristalle,

three buttons of crystal,

195 weder ze kleine noch ze grôz,

neither too small nor too big,

den buosem er dâ mite beslôz,

the bosom he there with closed,

er gouch unde er tumbe.

he fool and he simpleton.

sin buosem was alumbe

his bosom was all-around

bestreut mit knöpfelînen.

strewn with little-buttons.

200 diu sach man verre schînen

them saw one far shine

gel blâ grüene brûn rôt

yellow blue green brown red

swarz wîz, als er gebôt;

black white, as he ordered;

diu lûhten sô mit glanze,

they gleamed so with brightness,

swenn' er gie bî dem tanze,

whenever' he went by the dance,

205 sô wart er von beiden,

so was he by both,

von wîben und von meiden,

by women and by maidens,

vil minneclîche an gesehen.

very lovingly upon looked.

ich wil des mit wârheit jehen

I will of-that with truth say

daz ich bî dem selben knaben

that I by the same lad

den wîben het unhôhe erhaben.

to-the women would-have not-highly raised-(myself).

210

dâ der ermel an daz muoder gât,

where the sleeve to the body-piece goes,

alumbe und umbe was diu nât

all-around and around was the seam

behangen wol mit schellen:

hung well with bells:

die hôrt' man lûte hellen,

them heard' one loudly ring,

swenne er an dem reien spranc;

whenever he in the round-dance leapt;

215

den wîben ez durch diu ôren klanc.

to-the women it through the ears rang.

her Nîthart, unde solte er leben,

sir Neidhart, and should he live,

dem hete got den sin gegeben,

to-him had God the mind given,

der kunde ez iu gesingen baz

he could it to-you sing better

dann' ich gesagen, nû wizzet daz.

than' I tell, now know that.

220

si verkoufte manic huon unt ei

she sold many-a hen and egg

ê si im gewünne diu zwei,

before she for-him got the two,

hosen und spargolzen.

bose and buskins.

Als si dô dem stolzen

When she then for-the proud-one

225 sîniu bein het gekleit,

his legs had clothed,

«mîn wille mich hinz' hove treit»

«my will me toward' court carries»

sprach er. «lieber vater mîn,

said he. «dear father my,

nu bedarf ich wol der stiure dîn.

now need I well the support thy.

mir hât mîn muoter gegeben

to-me has my mother given

230 und ouch mîn swester, sol ich leben,

and also my sister, (if)-shall I live,

daz ich in alle mîne tage

that I to-them all my days

immer holdez herze trage.»

ever a-loving heart bear.»

Dem vater was daz ungemach.

To-the father was that discomfort.

zuo dem sun er dô sprach:

to the son he then spoke:

235 «ich gibe dir zuo der wæte

«I give to-thee to the clothing

einen hengest der ist dræte

a steed that is swift

und der wol springe ziune unt graben,

and that well leaps fences and ditches,

den solt dû dâ ze hove haben,

that shalt thou there at court have,

und der lange wege wol loufe;

and that long ways well runs;

240 gerne ich dir den koufe,

gladly I for-thee it buy,

ob ich in veile vinde.

if I it for-sale find.

lieber sun, nu erwinde

dear son, now turn-back

hinz' hove dîner verte.

toward' court of-thy journey.

diu hovewîse ist herte

the court-manner is hard

den die ir von kindes lit

for-those who it from child's limb

habent niht gevolget mit.

have not followed with.

lieber sun, nû men dû mir,

dear son, now drive thou for-me,

od habe den pfluoc, sô men ich dir,

or hold the plow, so drive I for-thee,

und bouwen wir die huobe;

and till we the field;

sô kumst dû in dîn gruobe

so comest thou into thy grave

mit grôzen êren alsam ich.

with great honor even-as I.

zwâre des versihe ich mich.

truly of-that expect I myself.

ich bin getriuwe, gewære,

I am faithful, truthful,

niht ein verrætære.

not a betrayer.

dar zuo gibe ich alliu jâr

there to give I all years

ze rehte mînen zehenden gar.

by right my tithe wholly.

245

250

255

ich hân gelebet mîne zît

I have lived my time

âne haz und âne nît.»

without hatred and without envy.»

Er sprach: «lieber vater mîn,

He said: «dear father my,

260 swîc und lâ die rede sîn.

be-silent and let the talk be.

dâ mac niht anders an geschehen,

there can nothing else thereof come,

wan ich wil benamen besehen

for I will indeed see

wie ez dâ ze hove smecke.

how it there at court tastes.

mir sulen ouch dîne secke

for-me shall also thy sacks

265 nimmêre rîten den kragen.

never-more ride the neck.

ich sol ouch dir ûf dînen wagen

I shall also for-thee on thy wagon

nimmêre mist gevazzen.

never-more dung load.

sô solte mich got hazzen,

so should me God hate,

swenn' ich dir ohsen wæte

whenever I for-thee oxen yoked

270 und dînen habern sæte:

and thy oats sowed:

daz zæme niht zewâre

that would-befit not truly

mînem langen valwen hâre

to-my long fair hair

unde mînem reidem locke

and to-my curling lock

und mînem wol stânden rocke

and to-my well fitting coat

und mîner wæhen hûben

and to-my fine cap

und den sîdînen tûben

and to-the silken doves

die dar ûf næten frouwen.

which there on sewed ladies.

ich hilfe dir nimmêre bouwen.»

I help thee never-more to-till.»

«Lieber sun, belîp bî mir.

«Dear son, remain by me.

ich weiz wol, ez wil geben dir

I know well, there will give to-thee

der meier Ruoprecht sîn kint,

the steward Ruprecht his child,

vil schâfe, swîn, und zehen rint,

many sheep, swine, and ten cattle,

alter unde junger.

old and young.

ze hove hâst dû hunger

at court hast thou hunger

und muost dar zuo vil harte ligen

and must there to very hard lie

und aller gnâden sîn verzigen.

and of-all favors be deprived.

nû volge mîner lêre,

now follow my teaching,

275

280

285

des hâst dû frum und êre;
of-that hast thou profit and honor;

wan vil selten im gellinget
for very seldom to-him succeeds

290 der wider sînen orden ringet.
who against his order strives.

dîn ordenunge ist der pfluoc.
thy ordering is the plow.

dû vindest hovelîute genuoc,
thou findest court-folk enough,

swelch ende dû kêrest.
whichever way thou turnest.

dîn laster dû gemêrest,
thy reproach thou increasest,

295 sun, des swer ich dir bî got;
son, of-that swear I to-thee by God;

der rehten hovelîute spot
the true court-folk's mockery

wirdest dû, vil liebez kint.
becomest thou, very dear child.

dû solt mir volgen unde erwint.»
thou shalt me follow and turn-back.»

«Vater, und wirde ich geriten,
«Father, and become I mounted,

300 ich trouwe in hovelichen siten
I trust in courtly manners

immer alsô wol genesen
ever so well to-thrive

sam die ze hove ie sint gewesen.
as those at court ever have been.

swer die hûben wæhe
whoever the cap fine

ûf mînem houpthe sæhe,
on my head should-see,

der swüer' wol tûsent eide

he would-swear' fully a-thousand oaths

für diu werc beide,

against the works both,

ob ich dir ie gemente

whether I for-thee ever drove

od phluoc in furch gedente.

or a-plow into a-furrow stretched.

swenne ich mich gekleide

whenever I myself clothe

in gewant daz si mir beide

in raiment that they to-me both

ze stiure gâben gester,

as support gave yesterday,

mîn muoter und mîn swester,

my mother and my sister,

sô bin ich sicherlîche

so am I certainly

dem vil ungelîche,

to-that very unlike,

ob ich etewenne

whether I at-some-time

korn ûf dem tenne

corn on the threshing-floor

mit drischelen ûz gebiez

with flails out beat

od ob ich stecken ie gestiez.

or whether I stakes ever drove.

swenne ich füeze unde bein

whenever I feet and legs

hân gezieret mit den zwein,

have adorned with the two,

hosen und schuohen von korrûn,

bose and shoes of cordovan,

305

310

315

320

ob ich ie gezûnte zûn
whether I ever fenced a-fence

dir oder ander iemen,
for-thee or other anyone,

des meldet mich niemen.
of-that betrays me no-one.

325 gist du mir den meidem,
givest thou to-me the gelding,

meir Ruoprechte z'eim' eidem
to-steward Ruprecht as-a' son-in-law

bin ich immer verzigen:
am I ever renounced:

ich wil mich niht durch wîp verligen.»
I will myself not for a-woman lie-idle.»

Er sprach: «sun, eine wîle dage
He said: «son, a while be-silent

330 und vernim waz ich dir sage.
and hear what I to-thee say.

swer volget guoter lêre
whoever follows good teaching

der gewinnet frum und êre:
he gains profit and honor:

swelch kint sînes vater rât
whichever child his father's counsel

ze allen zîten übergât,
at all times oversteps,

335 daz stêt ze jungest an der scham
that stands at last in the shame

und an dem schaden reht' alsam.
and in the harm just' likewise.

wilt dû dich sicherlîchen

wilt thou thyself surely

genôzen und gelîchen

match and liken

dem wol gebornen hoveman,

to-the well born courtier,

dâ misselinget dir an;

there fails for-thee in;

er tregt dir dar umbe haz.

he bears to-thee there for hatred.

dû solt ouch wol gelouben daz,

thou shalt also well believe that,

ez klaget dehein gebûre niht

it laments no peasant at-all

swaz dir dâ ze leide geschiht.

whatever to-thee there for sorrow happens.

und næme ein rehter hoveman

and should-take a true courtier

dem gebûren swaz er ie gewan,

from-the peasant whatever he ever won,

der gedinget doch ze jungest baz

he expects yet at last better

denne dû, nû wizze daz.

than thou, now know that.

nimst dû im ein fuoter,

takest thou from-him a fodder,

lieber sun vil guoter,

dear son very good,

gewinnet er dîn oberhant,

(if)-gets he of-thee upper-hand,

sô bist dû bûrge unde phant

so art thou surety and pledge

für alle die im habent genomen.

for all who from-him have taken.

340

345

350

er lât dich niht ze rede komen:

he lets thee not to speech come:

355 die pfenninge sint alle gezalt;

the pennies are all counted;

ze gote hât er sich versalt,

to God has he himself committed,

sleht er dich an dem roube.

strikes he thee at the robbery.

lieber sun, geloube

dear son, believe

mir diu mære und belîp

me the tale and remain

360 und nim ein êlîchez wîp.»

and take a lawful woman.»

The Father's Counsel and the Son's Answer

III

Helmbrecht will not stay: he must be up and out, and would rather rob every day than rear a foal three years for nothing. His father buys the horse dear — a loden, four cows, two oxen, three bulls, and corn: ten pounds for a horse worth three — and the boy boasts he could bite through stone. The counsel that follows is water before stolen wine, porridge before a stolen horse; the son answers that his cap and his hair will not let him keep still, and his father asks him which life is the purer.

«Vater, swaz sô mir geschiht,

«Father, whatever so to-me happens,

ich lâze mîner verte niht;

I leave of-my journey not;

ich muoz benamen in die bûne.

I must indeed into the high-seat.

nû heiz ander dîne süne

now bid other thy sons

daz si sich mit dem pfluoge muen.

that they themselves with the plow toil.

365

ez müezen rinder vor mir lüen

there must cattle before me low

die ich über ecke trîbe.

whith I over fields drive.

daz ich sô lange belîbe,

that I so long remain,

des irret mich ein gurre.

of-that binders me a nag,

daz ich niht ensnurre

that I not gallop

370

mit den andern über ecke

with the others over fields

und die gebûren durch die hecke

and the peasants through the hedge

niht enfüere bî dem hâre,

not drag by the hair,

daz ist mir leit zewâre.

that is to-me grievous truly.

die armuot möht' ich niht verdoln;

the poverty could' I not endure;

375

swenne ich driu jâr einen voln

if I three years a foal

züge und als lange ein rint,

reared and as long a beast,

der gewin wær' mir ein wint.

the gain were' to-me a wind.

ich wil rouben alle tage;

I will rob all days;

380 dâ mite ich mich wol bejage
there with I myself well provide

mit volliclicher koste
with full fare

und den lip vor froste
and the body from frost

wol behalte in dem winder,
well keep in the winter,

ez enwelle êt niemen rinder.
it unless-wants just no-one cattle.

385 vater, balde île,
father, quickly hasten,

entwâle deheiner wîle,
delay no while,

gip den meiden balde mir;
give the gelding quickly to-me;

ich blîbe lenger niht bî dir.»
I remain longer not by thee.»

Die rede wil ich kürzen:
The speech will I shorten:

390 einen loden von drîzic stürzen
a loden of thirty folds

(alsô saget uns daz mære,
(so tells to-us the tale,

daz der lode wære
that the loden were

aller loden lengest),
of-all lodens longest),

den gap er an den hengest,
that gave he for the steed,

395 und guoter küeje viere,
and of-good cows four,

zwên' ohsen und drî stiere,
two' oxen and three bulls,

und vier mütte kornes:

and four bushels of-corn:

ouwê guotes vlornes!

alas of-goods lost!

er koufte den hengst um zehen phunt;

he bought the steed for ten pounds;

er het in an der selben stunt

he would-have it at the same hour

kûme gegeben umbe driu:

hardly given for three:

ouwê verlorniu sibeniu!

alas lost seven!

Dô der sun wart bereit

When the son was made-ready

unde er sich het an geleit,

and he himself had on put,

nû hæret wie der knabe sprach.

now hear how the lad spoke.

er schutt' daz houbet unde sach

he shook' the head and looked

ûf ietwêder ahselbein:

on either shoulder-bone:

«ich bizzo wol durch einen stein;

«I bite well through a stone;

ich bin sô muotes ræze;

I am so of-spirit fierce;

hey waz ich îsens fræze!

hey what I of-iron would-devour!

ez nâme der keiser für gewin,

it would-take the emperor for gain,

vieng' ich in niht und züge in hin

should-catch' I him not and should-drag him away

und beschatze in unz an den slouch,

and should-tax him down to the hide,

400

405

410

und den herzogen ouch.

and the duke also.

415 über velt wil ich draben

over field will I trot

unde eteslîchen graben

and many a-ditch

ân' angest mînes verhes

without' dread of-my life

und alle welt dwerhes.

and all the-world crosswise.

vater, lâ mich ûz dîner huote:

father, let me out-of thy guarding:

420 hinnen für nâch mînem muote

from-now forth after my spirit

wil ich selbe wahsen.

will I myself grow.

vater, einen Sahsen

father, a Saxon

züget ir lîhter danne mich.»

rear you more-easily than me.»

Er sprach: «sun, sô wil ich dich

He said: «son, so will I thee

425 mîner zûhte lâzen frî.

of-my discipline let free.

nû zuo des der neve sî!

now to-it of-that-one the kinsman be!

sit dich mîn zuht sol mîden

since thee my discipline shall avoid

an dem ûf rîden,

in the up twisting,

sô hüete dîner hûben

so guard of-thy cap

430 und der sîdînen tûben,

and of-the silken doves,

daz man die indert rüere

lest one them anywhere touch

od mit übele iht zefüere

or with harm at-all tear-apart

dîn langez valwez hâre.

thy long fair hair.

und wilt dû zewâre

and wilt thou truly

mîner zuht nimmêre,

of-my discipline never-more,

sô fürhte ich vil sêre

so fear I very greatly

dû volgst ze jungest einem stabe

thou followest at last a staff

und swar dich wîse ein kleiner knabe.»

and wherever thee leads a little boy.»

er sprach: «sun, vil lieber knabe,

he said: «son, very dear lad,

lâ dich noch rihten abe.

let thyself still be-turned aside.

dû solt leben des ich lebe

thou shalt live on-what I live

und des dir dîn muoter gebe.

and on-what to-thee thy mother gives.

trinc wazzer, lieber sun mîn,

drink water, dear son my,

ê dû mit roube koufest wîn.

before thou with robbery buyest wine.

datz' Ôsterrîche clamirre,

in' Austria brain-fritters,

ist ez jener ist ez dirre,

is it that-one is it this-one,

435

440

445

der tumbe und der wîse

the foolish and the wise

hânt ez dâ für herren spîse.

hold it there for lords' food.

die solt dû ezzen, liebez kint,

that shalt thou eat, dear child,

450 ê dû ein geroubtez rint

before thou a stolen beast

gebest umb' eine henne

givest for' a hen

dem wirte eteswenne.

to-the host sometime.

dîn muoter durch die wochen

thy mother through the week

kan guoten brîen kochen:

can good porridge cook:

455 den solt dû ezzen in den grans

that shalt thou eat into the snout

ê dû gebest umb' eine gans

before thou givest for' a goose

ein geroubtez phärit.

a stolen palfrey.

sun, und hetest dû den sit,

son, and hadst thou the custom,

sô lebtest dû mit êren,

so wouldst-live thou with honor,

460 swar dû woltest kêren.

wherever thou wouldst turn.

sun, den rocken mische

son, the rye mix

mit habern ê dû vische

with oats before thou fish

ezzest nâch unêren.

eatest after dishonor.

sus kan dîn vater lêren.

thus can thy father teach.

volge mir, sô hâst dû sin:

follow me, so hast thou mind:

sî des niht, sô var dâ hin.

be of-that nothing, so fare there away.

erwirst dû guot und êren vil,

winnest thou goods and honors much,

für wâr ich des niht enwil

for truth I of-that nothing will

mit dir haben gemeine:

with thee have in-common:

hab' ouch den schaden eine.»

have' also the harm alone.»

«Dû solt trinken, vater mîn,

«Thou shalt drink, father my,

wazzer; sô wil ich trinken wîn.

water; so will I drink wine.

und iz dû gîslitze;

and eat thou groats;

sô wil ich ezzen ditze

so will I eat this

daz man dâ heizet huon versoten.

which one there calls hen boiled.

daz wirt mir nimmer verboten.

that is to-me never forbidden.

ich wil ouch unz an mînen tôt

I will also until at my death

von wîzen semeln ezzen brôt:

of white fine-flour eat bread:

haber ist dir geslaht.

oats is to-thee natural.

man liset ze Rôme an der phaht,

one reads at Rome in the law,

465

470

475

480

ein kint gevâhe in sîner jugent

a child takes in his youth

nâch sînem toten eine tugent.

after his godfather a virtue.

ein edel ritter was mîn tote;

a noble knight was my godfather;

sælic sî der selbe gote

blessed be the same godfather

485 von dem ich sô edel bin

from whom I so noble am

und trage sô hôchvertigen sin!»

and bear so haughty a-mind!»

Der vater sprach: «nû gloube daz,

The father said: «now believe that,

mir geviele êt michel baz

to-me would-please just much better

ein man der rehte tæte

a man who rightly did

490 und dar an belibe stæte.

and there in remained constant.

wær' des geburt ein wênic laz,

were' of-him birth a little low,

der behagte doch der welte baz

he would-please yet the world better

dan von küneges fruht ein man

than of a-king's stock a man

der tugent noch êre nie gewan.

who virtue or honor never won.

495 ein frumer man von swacher art

a worthy man of humble kind

und ein edel man an dem nie wart

and a noble man in whom never was

weder zuht noch êre bekant,

neither breeding nor honor known,

und komet die bēde in ein lant
and come the two into a land

dā niemen weiz wer si sint,
where no-one knows who they are,

man hât des swachen mannes kint
one holds the humble man's child

500

für den edelen hôchgeborn
for the noble high-born

der für êre hât schande erkorn.
who for honor has disgrace chosen.

sun, und wilt dû edel sîn,
son, and wilt thou noble be,

daz râte ich ûf die triuwe mîn,
that counsel I upon the faith my,

sô tuo vil edelîche.
so do very nobly.

505

guot zuht ist sicherîche
good breeding is surely

ein krône ob aller edelkeit:
a crown above all nobility:

daz sî dir für wâr geseit.»
that be to-thee for truth said.»

Er sprach: «vater, dû hât wâr.
He said: «father, thou hast right.

mich enlât mîn hûbe und mîn hâr
me lets my cap and my hair

510

und mîn wol stēde gêwæte
and my well fitting raiment

niht belîben stæte;
not remain constant;

si sint beide sô glanz,
they are both so bright,

daz si baz zæmen einem tanz

that they better would-befit a dance

515 danne der eiden oder dem phluoc.»

than the harrow or the plow.»

«Wê daz dich muoter getruoc!»

«Woe that thee a-mother bore!»

sprach der vater zuo dem sun.

said the father to the son.

«du wilt'z beste lân unt'z bæste tuon.

«thou wilt-the best leave and-the worst do.

sun, vil schœner jungelinc,

son, very fair youth,

520 dû solt sagen mir ein dinc,

thou shalt say to-me one thing,

ob dir wonen witze bî,

if in-thee dwell wits by,

weder baz lebendiger sî,

which better living-one be,

dem man fluochet unde schiltet

whom one curses and reviles

und des al diu welt engiltet

and for-whom all the world suffers

525 und mit der liute schaden lebet

and by the people's harm lives

und wider gotes hulde strebet;

and against God's favor strives;

nû welhes leben ist reiner?

now whose life is purer?

sô ist aber einer

so is however one

des al diu welt geniuzet

from-whom all the world profits

530 und den des niht verdriuzet,

and whom of-that nothing wearies,

er werbe naht unde tac

he labors night and day

daz man sîn geniezen mac,

that one of-him profit may,

und got dar under êret.

and God there under honors.

swelhez ende er kêret,

whichever way he turns,

dem ist got und al diu welt holt.

to-him is God and all the world gracious.

lieber sun, daz dû mir solt

dear son, that thou to-me shalt

mit der wârheit sagen daz,

with the truth say that,

weder dir nû gevalle baz.»

which to-thee now pleases better.»

535

The Four Dreams

IV

The father argues that the plow feeds king, lady, wolf, and eagle alike, and is told to go and preach. Then he tells the dreams: two burning lights in the boy's hands, one foot on the ground and one knee on a stump, a flight cut short by a clipped wing, and a raven and a crow combing his hair on a tree. Helmbrecht calls them all his good fortune, takes his leave, and rides to a castle that keeps men who dare ride; in a year he robs down to a spoon's worth, then turns for home.

«Vater mîn, daz tuot der man,

«Father my, that does the man,

des man niht engelten kan

of-whom one not suffer can

und des man geniezen sol;

and of-whom one profit shall;

540

der ist lebendiger wol.»

he is living well.»

«lieber sun, daz wærest dû,

«dear son, that wouldst-be thou,

ob dû mir woltest volgen nû.

if thou me wouldst follow now.

545 sô bouwe mit dem phluoge;

so till with the plow;

so geniezent dîn genuoge:

so profit of-thee many:

dîn geniuzet sicherliche

of-thee profits surely

der arme und der rîche;

the poor and the rich;

dîn geniuzet wolf unt ar

of-thee profits wolf and eagle

550 und alle crêatiure gar

and all creatures wholly

und swaz got ûf der erden

and whatever God upon the earth

hiez ie lebendic werden.

bade ever living become.

lieber sun, nû bouwe:

dear son, now till:

jâ wirt vil manic frouwe

indeed is very many-a lady

555 von dem bouwe geschænet;

by the husbandry beautified;

manec künic wirt gekrœnet

many-a king is crowned

von des bouwes stiuwer;

by the husbandry's support;

wan niemen wart sô tiuwer,

for no-one became so dear,

sin hôchvart wære kleine,

his pride were small,

wan durch daz bou aleine.»

except through the husbandry alone.»

«Vater, dîner predige

«Father, of-thy preaching

got mich schiere erledige.

God me soon deliver.

und ob ûz dir worden wære

and if out-of thee become were

ein rehter predigære,

a true preacher,

dû bræhtest liute wol ein her

thou wouldst-bring people fully an army

mit dîner predige über mer.

with thy preaching over sea.

vernim waz ich dir sagen wil:

hear what I to-thee say will:

bouwent die gebûren vil,

(if)-till the peasants much,

si ezzent wol dester mê.

they eat well so-much more.

swie halt mir mîn dinc ergê,

however just to-me my affair goes,

ich wil dem phluoge widersagen

I will to-the plow renounce

und sol ich wîze hende tragen.

and shall I white hands bear.

von des phluoges schulde,

by the plow's fault,

sô mir gotes hulde,

so to-me God's favor,

560

565

570

575 sô wære ich immer geschant,
so would-be I ever disgraced,
 swenne ich tanzte an frouwen hant.»
whenever I danced on a-lady's hand.»

Der vater sprach: «nû frâge,
The father said: «now ask,

daz dich des iht betrâge,
lest thee of-it at-all weary,

swâ dû sîst den wîsen bî,
wherever thou be the wise by,

580 mir troumte ein troum, waz daz sî.
to-me dreamed a dream, what that be.

dû hetest zwei licht in der hant;
thou hadst two lights in the hand;

diu brunnen daz si durch diu lant
which burned so-that they through the lands

lûhten mit ir schîne.
shone with their light.

lieber sun der mîne,
dear son the mine,

585 sus troumt' mir vert von einem man;
thus dreamed' to-me last-year of a man;

den sach ich hiure blinden gân.»
whom saw I this-year blind go.»

er sprach: «vater, daz ist guot.
he said: «father, that is good.

ich gelâze nimmer mînen muot
I give-up never my purpose

umb' sus getâniu mære:
for' such fashioned tales:

590 ein zage ich danne wære.»
a coward I then were.»

In enhalf êt niht sîn lêre.

Him helped just not his teaching.

er sprach: «mir troumte êt mêre.

he said: «to-me dreamed just more.

ein fuoz dir ûf der erde gie,

one foot of-thine upon the earth went,

und dû mit dem andern knie

and thou with the other knee

stüende ûf einem stocke.

stood upon a stump.

dir râgete ouch ûz dem rocke

to-thee juttet also out-of the coat

einez als ein ahsen drum.

something like an axle's stump.

sol dir der troum wesen frum,

shall to-thee the dream be profitable,

oder waz er bediute,

or what it may-mean,

des frâge wîse liute.»

of-that ask wise people.»

«Daz ist sælde unde heil

«That is fortune and welfare

und aller rîchen freuden teil.»

and of-all rich joys a-share.»

er sprach: «sun, noch troumte mir

he said: «son, still dreamed to-me

ein troum, den wil ich sagen dir.

a dream, that will I tell to-thee.

dû soltest fliegen hôhe

thou shouldst fly high

über welde und über lôhe:

over woods and over groves:

ein vetich wart dir versniten:

one wing was to-thee cut:

595

600

605

dô wart dîn fliegen vermiten.

then was thy flying stopped.

sol dir der troum guot sîn?

shall to-thee the dream good be?

610 ouwê hende fûeze und ougen dîn!»

alas hands feet and eyes thy!»

«Vater, al die tröume dîn

«Father, all the dreams thy

sint vil gar diu sælde mîn»

are very wholly the fortune my»

sprach der junge Helmbrecht.

said the young Helmbrecht.

«schaf dir umb' einen andern kneht:

«get for-thee about' an other servant:

615 dû bist mit mir versoumet,

thou art with me delayed,

swie vil dir sî getroumet.»

however much to-thee be dreamed.»

«Sun, al die tröume sint ein wint

«Son, all the dreams are a wind

die mir noch getroumet sint:

which to-me yet dreamed are:

nû hœr' von einem troume.

now hear' of a dream.

620 dû stüende ûf einem boume:

thou stood upon a tree:

von dînen fûezen an daz gras

from thy feet to the grass

wol anderhalp klâfter was:

fully one-and-a-half fathoms was:

ob dînem houppte ûf einem zwî

above thy head upon a twig

saz ein rabe, ein krâ dô bî:

sat a raven, a crow there by:

dîn hâr was dir bestroubet.

thy hair was to-thee disbeveled.

625

dô strâlte dir daz houbet

then combed for-thee the head

zeswenhalp der rabe dâ;

on-the-right the raven there;

winsterhalp schiet dir'z diu krâ.

on-the-left parted for-thee-it the crow.

ouwê, sun, des troumes!

alas, son, of-the dream!

ouwê, sun, des boumes!

alas, son, of-the tree!

630

ouwê des raben! ouwê der krân!

alas of-the raven! alas of-the crow!

jâ wæne ich riuwic bestân

indeed think I sorrowing to-remain

des ich an dir hân erzogen,

for-what I in thee have reared,

mir habe der troum danne gelogen.»

to-me unless-has the dream then lied.»

«Ob dir nû, vater, wizze Krist,

«If to-thee now, father, knows Christ,

635

troumte allez daz der ist,

dreamed all that which is,

beide übel unde guot,

both evil and good,

ich gelâze nimmer mînen muot

I give-up never my purpose

hinnen unz an mînen tât.

from-here until at my death.

mir wart der verte nie sô nôt.

to-me was of-the journey never so urgent.

640

vater, got der hüete dîn

father, God he guard of-thee

und ouch der lieben muoter mîn:

and also of-the dear mother my:

iuwer beider kindelîn

of-you both little-children

müezen immer sælic sîn:

may ever blessed be:

645 got habe uns alle in sîner pflege.»

God have us all in his care.»

dâ mite reit er ûf die wege;

there with rode he upon the ways;

urloup nam er zem vater.

leave took he from-the father.

hin drâte er durch den gater.

away hurried he through the gate.

solt' ich allez sîn geverte sagen,

should' I all his conduct tell,

650 daz enwürde in drîn tagen

that would-become in three days

od lihte in einer wochen

or perhaps in one week

nimmer gar volsprochen.

never wholly fully-spoken.

Ûf eine burc kam er geriten.

To a castle came he riding.

dâ was der wirt in den sîten

there was the host in the circumstances

daz er urliuages wîelt

that he of-warfare wielded

und ouch vil gerne die behielt

and also very gladly those kept

die wol getorsten rîten

who well dared ride

und mit den vînden strîten.

and with the foes fight.

dâ wart der knabe gesinde.

there became the lad a-retainer.

an roube er wart sô swinde,

at robbery he became so swift,

swaz ein ander ligen liez,

whatever an other lying left,

in sînen sac er'z allez stiez;

into his sack he-it all thrust;

er nam ez allez gemeine.

he took it all together.

dehein roup was im ze kleine;

no robbery was for-him too small;

im enwas ouch niht ze grôz.

for-him was also nothing too big.

ez wære rûch, ez wære blôz,

it were rough, it were bare,

ez wære krump, ez wære sleht,

it were crooked, it were straight,

daz nam allez Helmbreht,

that took all Helmbreht,

des meier Helmbrehtes kint.

the steward Helmbreht's child.

655

660

665

- 670 er nam daz ros, er nam daz rint,
he took the horse, he took the beast,
 er lie dem man niht leffels wert;
he left to-the man not a-spoon's worth;
 er nam wambîs unde swert,
he took doublet and sword,
 er nam mandel unde roc,
he took mantle and coat,
 er nam die geiz, er nam den boc,
he took the goat, he took the buck,
 675 er nam die ouwe, er nam den wider;
he took the ewe, he took the ram;
 daz galt er mit der hiute sider.
that paid he with the hide later.
 rœckel pheit dem wîbe
little-coat shift from-the woman
 zôch er ab dem lîbe,
drew he off the body,
 ir kürsen unde ir mandel:
her fur-coat and her mantle:
 680 des het er gerne wandel,
of-that would-have he gladly amends,
 dô in der scherge machte zam,
when him the bailiff made tame,
 daz er wîben ie genam;
that he from-women ever took;
 daz ist sicherlîchen wâr.
that is certainly true.
 ze wunsche im daz êrste jâr
to (bis)-wish for-him the first year
 685 sîne segelwinde duzzen
his sail-winds roared
 und sîniu schef ze heile fluzzen.
and his ships to welfare floated.

sînes muotes wart er sô geil

of-his spirit became he so wanton

dâ von daz im der beste teil

there from that to-him the best share

ie geviel an gewinnen.

ever fell in winnings.

dô begunde er heim sinnen,

then began he home to-turn,

690

als ie die liute phlâgen

as ever the people were-wont

heim zuo ir mâgen.

home to their kinsmen.

ze hove er urloup nam

at court he leave took

und ze dem gesinde sam,

and from the household likewise,

daz si got der guote

that them God the good

695

hete in sîner huote.

have in his guarding.

Helmbrecht Comes Home

V

The household runs out in a heap, and he greets the servants in the speech of Saxony or Brabant, his sister in Latin, his father in French, and his mother in Bohemian, until they conclude he is a Bohemian, a Wend, an Italian, a priest, or a Saxon. He calls his father a little peasant and his mother a dishonored woman, and his father will not house a stranger; at last the boy names his four oxen and the gate is opened. He is fed as no peasant ever was, and after supper his father asks him for the new manners of the court.

Hie hebet sich ein mære

Here raises itself a tale

daz vil müelich wære

that very hard were

ze verswîgen den liuten.

to keep-silent from-the people.

700 kunde ich ez bediuten

could I it set-forth

wie man in dâ heime enphie!

how one him there at-home received!

ob man iht gegen im gie?

whether one at-all toward him went?

nein, ez wart geloufen,

no, there was running,

al mit einem houfen;

all in one heap;

705 einz für daz ander dranc,

one before the other pressed,

vater unde muoter spranc

father and mother sprang

als in nie kalp erstürbe.

as to-them never a-calf had-died.

wer daz botenbrôt erwürbe?

who the messenger's-reward should-win?

dem gap man âne fluoch

to-him gave one without curse

710 beide hemedede unde bruoch.

both shirt and breeches.

sprach daz frîwîp und der kneht:

spoke the free-woman and the servant:

«wis willekomen Helmbrecht?»

«be welcome Helmbrecht?»

nein, sî entâten;

no, they did-not;

ez wart in widerrâten:

it was to-them advised-against:

si sprâchen: «juncherre mîn,

they said: «young-lord my,

ir sult gote willekomen sîn.»

you shall to-God welcome be.»

«vil liebe susterkindekîn,

«very dear little-sister's-child,

got lâte iuch immer sælic sîn.»

God let you ever blessed be.»

diu swester gegen im lief,

the sister toward him ran,

mit armen si in umbesweif.

with arms she him embraced.

dô sprach er zuo der swester:

then said he to the sister:

«grâtîa vester.»

«grace your.»

hin für was den jungen gâch,

out forth was to-the young urgent,

die alten zogten hinden nâch,

the old came behind after,

si enphiengen in beide âne zal.

they received him both without number.

zem vater sprach er: «dêû sal»;

to-the father said he: «God save»;

zuo der muoter sprach er sâ

to the mother said he at-once

bêheimisch: «dobraytrâ».

in-Bohemian: «good-morning».

si sâhen beide ein ander an

they looked both one another at

beidiu daz wîp und der man.

both the woman and the man.

715

720

725

730

diu hûsfrôwe sprach: «her wirt,
the housewife said: «sir husband,

wir sîn der sinne gar verirt:
we are of-the senses wholly gone-astay:

er ist niht unser beider kint;
he is not our both child;

er ist ein Bêheim oder ein Wint.»
he is a Bohemian or a Wend.»

735 der vater sprach: «er ist ein Walch:
the father said: «he is an Italian:

mînen sun den ich gote bevalch,
my son whom I to-God commended,

der ist ez niht sicherliche,
he is it not certainly,

und ist ime doch gelîche.»
and is to-him yet like.»

dô sprach sîn swester Gotelint:
then said his sister Gotelint:

740 «er ist niht iuwer beider kint:
«he is not your both child:

er antwurt' mir in der latîn;
he answered' to-me in the Latin;

er mac wol ein pfaffe sîn.»
he may well a priest be.»

«entriuwen», sprach der frîman,
«in-faith», said the free-man,

«als ich von im vernomen hân,
«as I from him heard have,

745 sô ist er ze Sahsen
so is he in Saxony

od ze Brâbant gewahsen:
or in Brabant grown:

er sprach ,liebe susterkindekin’;

he said ,dear little-sister’s-child’;

er mac wol ein Sahse sîn.»

he may well a Saxon be.»

Der wirt sprach mit rede sleht:

The host said with speech plain:

«bist du’z mîn sun Helmbreht?

«art thou-it my son Helmbreht?

750

dû hâst mich gwonnen dâ mite,

thou hast me won there with,

sprich ein wort nâch unserm site,

speak one word after our custom,

als unser vordern tâten,

as our forebears did,

sô daz ich’z mûge errâten.

so that I-it may guess.

dû sprichest immer ,dêu sal’,

thou sayest ever ,God save’;

755

daz ich enweiz zwiu ez sal.

that I know-not to-what it serves.

êre dîne muoter unde mich,

honor thy mother and me,

daz dien wir immer umbe dich,

that serve we ever from thee,

sprich ein wort tiutischen;

speak one word in-German;

ich wil dir dînen hengest wischen,

I will for-thee thy steed rub-down,

760

ich selbe unde niht mîn kneht;

I myself and not my servant;

lieber sun Helmbreht,

dear son Helmbreht,

daz du immer sælic mûezest sîn!»

that thou ever blessed mayst be!»

«ey waz saket ir gebûrekîn

«hey what say you little-peasant

765 und jenez gunêrte wîf?

and that dishonored woman?

mîn parit, mînen klâren lif

my palfrey, my fair body

sol dehein gebûrik man

shall no peasantish man

zwâre nimmer grîpen an.»

truly ever lay-bands upon.»

des erschrac der wirt vil sêre.

of-that was-startled the host very greatly.

770 dô sprach er aber mêre:

then said he again more:

«bistu'z Helmbrecht mîn sun,

«(if)-art-thou-it Helmbrecht my son,

ich siude dir noch hiute ein huon

I boil for-thee yet today a hen

und brâte dir ab einez,

and roast for-thee besides one,

daz rede ich niht meinez.

that speak I not falsely.

775 und bist du'z niht Helmbrecht, mîn kint,

and (if)-art thou-it not Helmbrecht, my child,

sît ir ein Bêheim oder ein Wint,

(if)-are you a Bobemian or a Wend,

sô vart hin zuo den Winden.

so fare away to the Wends.

ich hân mit mînen kinden

I have with my children

weizgot vil ze schaffen:

God-knows much to do:

ich gibe ouch keinem pffaffen

I give also to-no priest

780

niht wan sîn barez reht.

anything except his bare due.

sît ir'z niht Helmbreht,

(if)-are you-it not Helmbreht,

het ich dan alle vische,

had I then all fishes,

ir'n twaht bî mînem tische

you wash by my table

durch ezzen nimmer iuwer hant.

for eating never your hand.

785

sît ir ein Sahse od ein Brâbant,

(if)-are you a Saxon or a Brabanter,

oder sît ir von Walhen,

or (if)-are you from Italians,

ir müezet iuwer malhen

you must your saddle-bags

mit iu hân gefüeret.

with you have carried.

von iu wirt gerüeret

by you is touched

790

des mînen niht zewâre,

of mine nothing truly,

und wær' diu naht ein jâre.

and were' the night a year.

ich enhân den mete noch den wîn:

I have-not the mead nor the wine:

juncherre, ir sult bî herren sîn.»

young-lord, you shall by lords be.»

- 795 Nû was ez harte spâte.
Now was it very late.
- der knabe wart ze râte
the lad came to counsel
- in sîn selbes muote:
in his own spirit:
- «sam mir got der guote,
«so(-help) me God the good,
- ich wil iu sagen wer ich sî.
I will to-you say who I be.
- 800 ez ist hie nindert nâhen bî
there is here nowhere near by
- ein wirt der mich behalte.
a host who me should-lodge.
- niht guoter witze ich walte
nothing of-good wits I dispose
- daz ich mîn rede verkêre:
that I my speech pervert:
- ich'n tuon ez nimmer mêre.»
I do it never more.»
- 805 er sprach: «jâ bin ich ez der.»
he said: «indeed am I it be.»
- der vater sprach: «nû saget, wer?»
the father said: «now say, who?»
- «der dâ heizet alsam ir.»
«he-who there is-called even-as you.»
- der vater sprach: «den nennet mir.»
the father said: «him name to-me.»
- «ich bin geheizen Helmbrecht;
«I am called Helmbrecht;
- 810 iuwer sun und iuwer kneht
your son and your servant
- was ich vor einem jâre:
was I before one year:

daz sage ich iu zewâre.»

that say I to-you truly.»

der vater sprach: «nein ir».

the father said: «no you».

«ez ist wâr.» «sô nennet mir

«it is true.» «so name to-me

mîn ohsen alle viere.»

my oxen all four.»

«daz tuon êt ich vil schiere.

«that do just I very quickly.

der ich dô wîlen pflegte

which I then formerly tended

und mînen gart ob in wegte,

and my goad over them swung,

der eine heizet Ouwer;

the one is-called Ouwer;

ez wart nie gebouwer

there was never a-peasant

sô rîche noch sô wacker,

so rich nor so brave,

er zæme ûf sînem acker.

unless-he would-befit upon his field.

der ander der hiez Ræme;

the second he was-called Ræme;

nie rint sô genæme

never a-beast so pleasing

wart geweten under joch.

was yoked under a-yoke.

den dritten nenne ich iu noch:

the third name I to-you still:

der was geheizen Erge.

he was called Erge.

815

820

825

ez kumt von mîner kerge
it comes from my sbrewdness

daz ich sie kan genennen.
that I them can name.

830 welt ir mich noch erkennen?
will you me still acknowledge?

der vierde der hiez Sunne.
the fourth he was-called Sunne.

ob ichs' genennen kunne,
whether I-them' name can,

des lât mich geniezen,
of-that let me profit,

heizet mir daz tor ûf sliezen.»
bid for-me the gate up unlock.»

835 der vater sprach: «tür unde tor,
the father said: «door and gate,

dâ solt dû niht sîn lenger vor;
there shalt thou not be longer before;

beide gadem unde schrîn
both chamber and chest

sol dir allez offen sîn.»
shall to-thee all open be.»

Unsælde sî verwâzen!
Ill-fortune be accursed!

840 ich bin vil gar erlâzen
I am very wholly spared

sô guoter handelunge
of-so good treatment

als dâ het der junge.
as there had the young-one.

sîn phärt wart enphettet,
his palfrey was unbarnessed,

im selben wol gebettet

for-him self well bedded

von swester und von muoter.

by sister and by mother.

der vater gap daz fuoter

the father gave the fodder

weizgot niht mit zadele.

God-knows not with stinting.

swie vil ich var enwadele,

however much I fare wandering,

sô bin ich an deheiner stete

so am I at no place

dâ man mir tuo als man im tete.

where one to-me should-do as one to-him did.

diu muoter rief die tohter an:

the mother called the daughter to:

«dû solt loufen und niht gân

«thou shalt run and not walk

in daz gadem unde reich'

into the chamber and reach'

einen polster unde ein küsse weich.»

a bolster and a cushion soft.»

daz wart im under den arm

that was for-him under the arm

gelegt ûf einen oven warm,

laid upon a stove warm,

dâ er vil sanfte erbeit,

there he very softly waited,

unz daz ezzen wart bereit.

until the food was made-ready.

Dô der knabe erwachtet',

When the lad awoke',

daz ezzen was gemachet,

the food was prepared,

845

850

855

860

und er die hende het getwagen,
and he the hands had washed,

hoert waz für in wart getragen.
hear what before him was borne.

ich wil iu nennen d'êrsten traht:
I will to-you name the-first dish:

wær' ich ein herre in hôher aht,
were' I a lord in high esteem,

865 mit der selben rihte
with the same course

wolte ich haben phlihte:
would I have a-share:

ein krût vil kleine gesniten;
a cabbage very finely cut;

veizt und mâger, in bêden siten,
fat and lean, in both sides,

ein guot fleisch lac dâ bî.
a good meat lay there by.

870 hœret waz daz ander sî:
hear what the second be:

ein veizter kæse, der was mar;
a fat cheese, it was mellow;

diu rihte wart getragen dar.
the course was borne thither.

nû hœret wie'ch daz wizze.
now hear how-I that know.

nie veizter gans an spizze
never a-fatter goose on a-spit

875 bî fiure wart gebrâten:
by fire was roasted:

mit willen si daz tâten,
with will they that did,

ir deheinez des verdrôz;
of-them none of-it wearied;

si was michel unde grôz,
it was big and great,

gelîch einem trappen;
like a bustard;

die sazt' man für den knappen.
it set' one before the lad.

880

ein huon gebrâten, einz versoten,
one hen roasted, one boiled,

als der wirt het geboten,
as the host had ordered,

diu wurden ouch getragen dar.
they were also borne thither.

ein herre næm' der spîse war,
a lord would-take' of-the food heed,

swenne er gejeides phlæge
whenever he of-hunting practiced

885

und ûf einer warte læge.
and upon a lookout lay.

noch spîse maneger hande,
still food of-many a-kind,

die gebûre nie bekande,
which a-peasant never knew,

als guote lîpnar
such good sustenance

truoc man für den knaben dar.
bore one before the lad thither.

890

der vater sprach: «und het ich wîn,
the father said: «and had I wine,

der müeste hînte getrunken sîn.
it must tonight drunk be.

lieber sun mîn, nû trinc

dear son my, now drink

den aller besten ursprinc

the very best spring

895 der ûz erden ie geflôz;

that out-of earth ever flowed;

ich weiz niht brunnen sîn genôz,

I know no well its equal,

wan ze Wankhûsen der:

except at Wankhausen that-one:

den tregt êt uns nû niemen her.»

it bears just to-us now no-one hither.»

Dô si dô mit freuden gâzen,

When they then with joy ate,

900 der wirt niht wolte lâzen,

the host not would leave,

erne frâgte in der mære

he asked him of-the tale

wie der hove wise wære,

how the court-manner were,

dâ er wære gewesen bî.

where he had been by.

«sage mir sun, wie der sî;

«say to-me son, how it be;

905 sô sag' ich dir denne

so say' I to-thee then

wie ich etewenne

how I at-some-time

bî mînen jungen jâren

in my young years

die liute sach gebâren.»

the people saw behave.»

«vater mîn, daz sage mir;

«father my, that say to-me;

zehant sô wil ich sagen dir

at-once so will I say to-thee

swes dû mich frâgen wil:

whatever thou me ask wilt:

der niuwen site weiz ich vil.»

of-the new customs know I much.»

910

Court as It Was, and Court as It Is

VI

The father remembers court as he saw it: buhurting, a dance to the fiddle, a reading about Ernst, shooting at the mark, and knights who could not deal in knavery. Helmbrecht gives him the new customs — drink up, and lying is courtliness — and his father supplies the new hunting-cry: stab, maim, hang, and hold the rich for ransom. Then the boy sleeps, and in the morning shows his gifts: a whetstone, a scythe, an axe, and a hoe for his father, a fox-fur robbed from a priest for his mother, and a silk band for Gotelint.

«Wîlen dô ich was ein kneht

«Formerly when I was a lad

und mich dîn ene Helmbrecht,

and me thy grandfather Helmbrecht,

der mîn vater was genant,

who my father was called,

hin ze hove het gesant

away to court had sent

mit kæse und mit eier,

with cheese and with eggs,

als noch tuot ein meier,

as still does a steward,

dô nam ich der ritter war

then took I of-the knights heed

und markte ir geverte gar.

and marked their conduct wholly.

915

920

si wâren hoffîch unde gemeit,
they were courtly and merry,
 und kunden niht mit schalkheit.
and knew nothing of knavery.

als nû bî disen zîten kan
as now in these times can
 manic wîp und manic man.
many-a woman and many-a man.

925 die ritter heten einen site,
the knights had a custom,
 dâ liebtens' sich den frouwen mite.
there endeared-they' themselves to-the ladies with.

einez ist buhurdiern genant:
one is to-buhurt named:
 daz tet ein hoveman mir bekant,
that made a courtier to-me known,

dô ich in frâgte der mære
when I him asked of-the tale

930 wie ez genennet wære.
how it named were.

si fuoren sam si wolden toben
they fared as-if they would rage
 (dar umbe hôte ich si loben),
(there for heard I them praised),

ein schar hin, diu ander her;
one troop thither, the other thither;

ez fuor dirre unde der
there fared this-one and that

935 als er enen wolde stôzen.
as he that-one would thrust.

under mînen genôzen

among my fellows

ist ez selten geschehen

is it seldom happened

daz ich ze hove hân gesehen.

what I at court have seen.

als si danne daz getâten,

when they then that had-done,

einen tanz sî dô trâten

a dance they then trod

mit hôchvertigem gesange:

with proud singing:

daz kurz' die wîle lange.

that shortened' the while long.

vil schiere kam ein spilman;

very soon came a minstrel;

mit sîner gîgen huop er an:

with his fiddle struck he up:

dô stuonden ûf die frouwen;

then stood up the ladies;

die möht' man gerne schouwen;

them might' one gladly behold;

die ritter gegen in giengen,

the knights toward them went,

bî handen si si viengen.

by hands they them took.

dâ was wunne überkraft

there was delight's over-measure

von frouwen und von ritterschaft

of ladies and of knighthood

in süezer ougen weide.

in sweet eyes' pasture.

junkherren unde meide,

young-lords and maidens,

940

945

950

si tanzten frœliche,

they danced joyfully,

arme unde rîche.

poor and rich.

955 als des danne nimmê was,

when of-that then no-more was,

sô gie dar einer unde las

so went thither one and read

von einem der hiez Ernest.

of one who was-called Ernest.

swaz ieglich aller gernest

whatever each of-all most-gladly

wolte tuon, daz vander.

would do, that found-be.

960 dô schôz aber der ander

then shot again the other

mit dem bogen zuo dem zil.

with the bow to the mark.

maneger freude was dâ vil:

of-many-a joy was there much:

ener jagte, dirre birste.

that-one hunted, this-one stalked.

der dô was der wirste,

he-who then was the worst,

965 der wære uns nû der beste.

he would-be to-us now the best.

wie wol ich etewenne weste

how well I at-some-time knew

waz triuwe und êre mêrte

what faithfulness and honor increased

ê ez valscheit verkêrte!

before it falseness perverted!

die valschen und die lôsen,

the false and the wily,

die diu reht verbôsen

who the rights corrupt

mit ir listen kunden,

with their tricks could,

die herrn in dô niht gunden

the lords to-them then not granted

dâ ze hove der spîse.

there at court of-the food.

der ist nû der wîse,

he is now the wise-one,

der lôsen unde liegen kan;

who flatter and lie can;

der ist ze hove ein werder man

he is at court a worthy man

und hât guot und êre

and has goods and honor

leider michels mêre

alas much more

danne ein man der rehte lebet

than a man who rightly lives

und nâch gotes hulden strebet.

and after God's favor strives.

als vil weiz ich der alten site.

so much know I of-the old custom.

sun, nû êre mich dâ mite

son, now honor me there with

und sage mir die niuwen.»

and tell to-me the new.»

«Daz tuon êt ich entriuwen.

«That do just I in-faith.

daz sint nû hovelîchiu dinc:

these are now courtly things:

,trinkâ, herre, trinkâ trinc!

,drink-up, sir, drink-up drink!

970

975

980

985

trinc daz ûz; sô trinke ich daz.

drink that off; so drink I that.

wie möhte uns immer werden baz?’

how might to-us ever become better?’

vernim waz ich bediute:

hear what I mean:

990 ê vant man werde liute

before found one worthy people

bî den schœnen frouwen:

by the fair ladies:

nû muoz man si schouwen

now must one them behold

bî dem veilen wîne.

by the for-sale wine.

daz sint die hœhsten pîne

these are the highest pains

995 den âbent und den morgen,

the evening and the morning,

wie si daz besorgen,

how they that provide,

ob des wînes zerinne,

if of-the wine runs-out,

wie der wirt gewinne

how the host may-get

einen der sî als guot,

one that be as good,

1000 dâ von si haben hœhen muot.

there from they have high spirit.

daz sint nû ir brieve und minne:

these are now their letters and love:

,vil sœuze litgebinne,

,very sweet wine-hostess,

ir sult fûllen uns den maser.

you shall fill for-us the maple-cup.

ein affe unde ein narre waser,

an ape and a fool was-be,

der ie gesente sînen lîp

who ever made-pine his person

1005

für guoten wîn umbe ein wîp.'

instead-of good wine for a woman.'

swer liegen kan, der ist gemeit;

whoever lie can, he is merry;

triegen daz ist hövischeit;

to-deceive that is courtliness;

er ist gefüege, swer den man

he is well-bred, whoever the man

mit guoter rede versnîden kan;

with fair speech cut-down can;

1010

swer schiltet schalclîche,

whoever reviles knavisbly,

der ist nû tugentrîche.

he is now virtue-rich.

der alten leben, geloubet mir,

the old-ones' life, believe me,

die dâ lebent alsam ir,

who there live even-as you,

der ist nû in dem banne

he is now in the ban

1015

und ist wîbe und manne

and is to-woman and to-man

ze genôze als mære

for a-fellow as welcome

als ein hâhære.

as a hangman.

âht und ban daz ist ein spot.»

outlawry and ban that is a jest.»

1020 Der alte sprach: «daz barme got
The old-man said: «that pity God

und sî im immer gekleit
and be to-him ever lamented

daz diu unreht sint sô breit.
that the wrongs are so broad.

die alten turnei sint verslagen,
the old tournaments are done-away,

und sint die niuwen für getragen.
and are the new forth brought.

1025 wîlen hôte man kroyieren sô:
formerly heard one cry so:

,heyâ, ritter, wis êt frô!’
,beya, knight, be just glad!’

nû kroyiert man durch den tac:
now cries one through the day:

,jagâ, ritter, jagâ jac!
,bunt-on, knight, bunt-on bunt!’

stichâ stich! slâhâ slach!
stab-on stab! strike-on strike!’

1030 stümbel den der ê gesach;
maim him who before saw;

slach mir dem abe den fuoz;
strike for-me from-him off the foot;

tuo mir disem der hende buoz:
make for-me this-one of-the hands rid:

dû solt mir disen hâhen,
thou shalt for-me this-one hang,

und enen rîchen vâhen,
and that rich-one take,

1035 der gît uns wol hundert phunt.›»
he gives us fully a-hundred pounds.’›»

«Mir sint die site alle kunt.

«To-me are the customs all known.

vater mîn, wan daz ich enwil,

father my, except that I will-not,

ich trouwe dir gesagen vil

I trust to-thee to-tell much

niuwān von den niuwen siten.

only of the new customs.

ich muoz slāfen; ich hân vil geriten,

I must sleep; I have much ridden,

1040

mir ist hînt ruowe nôt.»

to-me is tonight rest needful.»

dô tâten si als er gebôt.

then did they as he bade.

lîlachen was dâ fremde;

a-linen-sheet was there strange;

ein niuwewachen hemde

a newly-washed shirt

sîn swester Gotelint dô swief

his sister Gotelint then spread

1045

über daz bette dâ er slief

over the bed where he slept

unz ez hôhe wart betaget.

until it high became day.

wie er nû vert daz wirt gesaget.

how he now fares that is told.

Ez ist billich unde reht

It is fitting and right

1050 daz der junge Helmbrecht

that the young Helmbrecht

ûz ziehe ob er iht bringe

out draw whether he anything brings

von hove gâmelîcher dinge

from court of-merry things

dem vater der muoter und der swester.

to-the father to-the mother and to-the sister.

jâ zewâre, unde wester

indeed truly, and knew-he

1055 waz ez allez wære,

what it all were,

ir lachtet der mære:

you would-laugh at-the tale:

dem vater er brâht' ein wetzestein,

to-the father he brought' a whetstone,

daz nie mâder dehein

that never a-mower any

in kumpf bezzern gebant,

in a-sheath better bound,

1060 und eine segense, daz nie hant

and a scythe, that never a-hand

sô guote gezôch durch daz gras:

so good drew through the grass:

hey welch gebûrkleinôt daz was!

hey what a-peasant-jewel that was!

und brâht' im ein bile,

and brought' to-him an axe,

daz in maneger wîle

that in many-a while

1065 gesmit' sô guotez nie kein smit,

forged' so good never any smith,

und eine hacken dâ mit.

and a hoe there with.

einen fuhspelz sô guoter,

a fox-fur so good,

den brâhte er sîner muoter,

that brought he to-his mother,

Helmbrecht der junge knabe:

Helmbrecht the young lad:

den zôch er einem pfaffen abe;

it drew he from-a priest off;

ob er'z roubte oder stæle

whether he-it robbed or stole

wie ungerne ich daz hæle,

how unwillingly I that would-hide,

wær' ich sîn an ein ende komen.

were' I of-it to an end come.

einem krâmer heter genomen

from-a peddler had-he taken

ein sîdîn gebinde;

a silken head-band;

daz gap er Gotelinde,

that gave he to-Gotelint,

und einen borten wol beslagen,

and a girdle well studded,

den billicher solte tragen

which more-fittingly should wear

eines edelen mannes kint

a noble man's child

dan sîn swester Gotelint.

than his sister Gotelint.

dem knehte schuoch mit riemen.

to-the servant shoes with straps.

1070

1075

1080

die het er ander niemen

them would-have he other for-no-one

sô verre gefüeret

so far carried

noch mit handen gerüeret.

nor with hands touched.

1085 sô hövesch was Helmbrecht:

so courtly was Helmbrecht:

wær' er noch sînes vater kneht,

were' he still of-his father's servant,

er het in lâzen âne schuoch.

he would-have him left without shoes.

dem frîwîbe ein houbettuoch

to-the free-woman a head-cloth

brâht' er und einen bendel rôd;

brought' he and a ribbon red;

1090 der zweier was der dierne nôd.

of-the two was the maid's need.

His Companions, and Their Names

VII

Seven days at home feel like a year to a man not robbing, and he takes his leave again. His father pleads that he sit still and wash his hands; the boy answers with four rich men he means to strip, then names his companions — Lemberslint, Slickenwider, Hellesac, Rütelschrin, Küefrâz, Müschenkelch, Wolfesguome, Wolfesdrüzzel, and Wolfesdarm, whose names say what they swallow and what they open — and his own, Slintezgeu. His father answers that God is awake, and a bailiff can make them step as he pleases, were there three times as many.

«Nû sprechet wie lange sî

«Now say how long be

der knappe dem vater bî.»

the lad the father by.»

siben tage, daz ist wâr.

seven days, that is true.

diu wîle dûhte in ein jâr

the while seemed to-him a year

daz er niht enroubte.

that he not robbed.

zehant er urloubte

at-once he took-leave

von vater und von muoter.

from father and from mother.

«neinâ, lieber sun vil guoter,

«no-no, dear son very good,

ob dû trouwest geleben

if thou trustest to-live

des ich dir hân ze geben

on-what I to-thee have to give

immer an mîn ende,

ever until my end,

sô sitz und twach dîn hende;

so sit and wash thy hands;

gê niuwan ûz unt in.

go only out and in.

sun, tuo die hovewîse hin;

son, put the court-manner away;

diu ist bitter unde sûr.

it is bitter and sour.

1095

1100

1105

noch gerner bin ich ein gebûr

yet more-gladly am I a peasant

danne ein armer hoveman

than a poor courtier

der nie huobegelt gewan

who never farm-rent won

und niuwan z'allen zîten

and only at-all times

1110 ûf den lîp muoz rîten

upon the life must ride

den âbent und den morgen

the evening and the morning

und muoz dar under sorgen

and must there under worry

swenn' in sîn vînde vâhen,

when' him his foes take,

stümbeln unde hâhen.»

maim and hang.»

1115 «Vater», sprach der junge,

«Father», said the young-one,

«diner handelunge,

«of-thy treatment,

der solt dû immer haben danc.

of-that shalt thou ever have thanks.

doch sît ich niht wînes tranc,

yet since I no wine drank,

des ist mê danne ein woche:

of-that is more than a week:

1120 des gürte ich drîer loche

therefore gird I by-three holes

an der gürtel mîn hinhinder.

on the belt my further-back.

ich muoz êt haben rinder

I must just have cattle

ê diu rinke gestê

before the buckle stands

an der stat dâ si was ê.

at the place where it was before.

ez werdent phlüege gesûmet

there become plows idled

1125

und rinder ûf gerûmet

and cattle up cleared

ê mir der lîp geraste

before to-me the body rested

und aber wider gemaste.

and again back fattened.

mir hât ein rîcher getân

to-me has a rich-man done

sô leide daz mir nie man

so grievously that to-me never a-man

1130

als vil getân hât.

as much done has.

über mînes toten sât

over of-my godfather's sowing

sach ich in eines rîten.

saw I him once ride.

möht' êt er's erbîten,

could' just be-it await,

er gîltet mir mit houfen.

he pays me with heaps.

1135

sîniu rinder müezen loufen,

his cattle must run,

sîniu schâf, sîniu swîn,

his sheep, his swine,

daz er dem lieben toten mîn

that he to-the dear godfather my

alsô zertrat sîn arbeit:

so trampled his toil:

1140 daz ist mir innecklîchen leit.

that is to-me inwardly grievous.

noch weiz ich einen rîchen man,

still know I a rich man,

der hât mir leit ouch getân,

he has to-me harm also done,

der az zuo den krapfen brôt:

he ate with the fritters bread:

rich' ich daz niht, sô bin ich tôt.

avenge' I that not, so am I dead.

1145 noch weiz ich einen rîchen,

still know I a rich-one,

daz mir sicherlîchen

that to-me certainly

deheiner leider nie getete;

no-one more-grievously ever did;

durch eines bischoves bete

for a bishop's prayer

wolt' ich ez niht enlân

would' I it not leave

1150 daz er mir leides hât getân.»

what he to-me of-harm has done.»

der vater sprach: «waz ist daz?»

the father said: «what is that?»

«er lie die gürtel wîter baz,

«he let the belt wider more,

do er saz ob sînem tische.

when he sat at his table.

hey waz ich des erwische

hey what I of-it catch

daz dâ heizet sîn!

that there is-called his!

1155

daz muoz allez wesen mîn

that must all be mine

daz im ziuhet phluoc unt wagen.

what for-him draws plow and wagon.

daz hilfet mir daz ich sol tragen

that helps me that I shall wear

gewant ze wîhnahten,

raiment at Christmas,

swie ich daz mac betrahten.

however I that may contrive.

1160

wes wænt êt er vil tumber gouch,

what thinks just he very foolish fool,

zwâre und etelîcher ouch

truly and some-one also

der mir herzen leit hât getân?

who to-me of-heart sorrow has done?

liez' ich daz ungerochen stân,

should-let' I that unavenged stand,

sô wær' ich niht ein frecher.

so were' I not a bold-one.

1165

der blies in einen becher

who blew into a cup

den schûm von dem biere:

the foam from the beer:

und ræche ich daz niht schiere,

and should-avenge I that not quickly,

sô würde ich nimmer frouwen wert,

so would-become I never of-ladies worthy,

1170 **zwâre und solte ouch nimmer swert**
truly and should also never a-sword

gürten umbe mîne sîten.
gird about my sides.

man hoeret in kurzen zîten
one hears in short time

von Helmbrehte mære
of Helmbrecht tidings

daz wîter hof wirt lære;
that wide farm becomes empty;

1175 **und vinde ich niht den selben man,**
and (if)-find I not the same man,

sô trîbe ich doch diu rinder dan.»
so drive I yet the cattle thence.»

Der vater sprach: «nû nenne mir,
The father said: «now name to-me,

daz ich'z immer diene hin ze dir,
that I-it ever repay thither to thee,

dîne gesellen die knaben
thy comrades the lads

1180 **die dich daz gelêret haben**
who thee that taught have

daz dû dem rîchen manne
that thou from-the rich man

sîne habe nemest danne,
his goods take then,

so er zuo den kraphen izzet brôt;
when he with the fritters eats bread;

die nenne mir, des ist mir nôt.»
them name to-me, of-that is to-me need.»

«Daz ist mîn geselle Lemberslint

«That is my comrade Lemberslint

1185

und Slickenwider; die zwêne sint

and Slickenwider; the two are

von den ich hân die lêre.

from whom I have the teaching.

noch nenne ich dir mêre.

still name I to-thee more.

Hellesac und Rütelschrîn,

Hellesac and Rütelschrîn,

daz sint die schuolmeister mîn,

these are the schoolmasters my,

1190

Küefrâz und Müschenkelch.

Küefrâz and Müschenkelch.

nû sich, herre vater, welch

now see, sir father, what

knaben sint an der schar.

lads are in the band.

die sehse ich hân genennet gar.

the six I have named wholly.

mîn geselle Wolfesguome,

my comrade Wolfesguome,

1195

swie lieb im sîn sîn muome

however dear to-him be his aunt

sîn base sîn œheim und sîn veter,

his aunt his uncle and his uncle,

und wære ez hornunges weter,

and were it February's weather,

er lât niht an ir libe

he leaves nothing on their body

dem manne noch dem wîbe

to-the man nor to-the woman

1200

einen vaden vor ir scham,

a thread before their shame,

den fremden und den kunden sam.

to-the strange-ones and to-the known-ones alike.

mîn geselle Wolvesdrüzzel,

my comrade Wolvesdrüzzel,

ûf tuot er âne slüzzel

open makes he without key

1205 alliu slôz und îsenhalt.

all locks and iron-fetters.

in einem jâre ich hân gezalt

in one year I have counted

hundert îsenhalt grôz,

a-hundred iron-fetters great,

daz ie daz slôz danne schôz,

that ever the lock then sprang,

als er von verren gie dar zuo.

as he from afar went there to.

1210 ros ohsen unde manic kuo

horses oxen and many-a cow

ungezalt sint beliben

uncounted are remained

diu er ûz hove hât getriben,

whicb he out-of farm has driven,

daz ie daz slôz von sîner stat

that ever the lock from its place

schôz swenn' er dar zuo trat.

sprang whenever' he there to stepped.

1215 noch hân ich einen compân,

still have I a companion,

daz nie knappe gewan

that never a-lad won

einen nâmen alsô hovelîch;

a name so courtly;

den gâbem diu herzoginne rîch,

it gave-him the duchess rich,

diu edele und diu frîe,

the noble and the free,

von Nônarre Narrîe:

of Nônarre Narrîe:

der ist geheizen Wolfesdarm.

he is called Wolfesdarm.

ez sî kalt oder warm,

it be cold or warm,

roubes wirt er nimmer vol.

of-robbery becomes he never full.

diupheit tuot im sô wol,

thievery does to-him so well,

der enwirt er nimmer sat.

of-it becomes he never sated.

einen fuoz er nie getrat

one foot he never stepped

ûz der übele in die güete.

out-of the evil into the good.

im strebet êt sîn gemüete

for-him strives just his spirit

gegen der übeltæte

toward the evil-deed

als diu krâ tuot zuo der sæte.»

as the crow does toward the sowing.»

Der vater sprach: «nû sage mir

The father said: «now say to-me

wie si sprechen hin ze dir,

how they speak thither to thee,

ieglich dîn geselle,

each thy comrade,

sô er dir rüefen welle.»

when he to-thee call would.»

«vater mîn, daz ist ein name,

«father my, that is a name,

1220

1225

1230

1235

des ich mich nimmer geschame,
of-which I myself never shame,

ich bin genant Slintezgeu.
I am named Slintezgeu.

die gebûren ich vil selten freu
the peasants I very seldom gladden

die mir sint gesezzen.
who near-me are settled.

1240 ir kint müezen ezzen
their children must eat

ûz dem wazzer daz koch.
out-of the water the gruel.

leider tuon ich in noch:
more-grievously do I to-them still:

dem ich daz ouge ûz drücke,
to-the-one I the eye out press,

disen hâhe ich in den rücke,
this-one hang I by the back,

1245 disen binde ich in den âmeizstoc,
this-one bind I into the ant-hill,

enem ziuhe ich den loc
from-that-one draw I the lock

mit der zange ûz dem barte,
with the tongs out-of the beard,

dem andern rîze ich die swarte,
from-the other tear I the scalp,

enem mülle ich die lide,
of-that-one crush I the limbs,

1250 disen henke ich in die wide
this-one hang I in the withe

bî den sparrâdern sîn.
by the leg-sinews his.

daz die bûren hânt daz ist mîn.
what the peasants have that is mine.

swâ unser zehen rîten,
wherever of-us ten ride,

ob unser zweinzec erbîten,
if for-us twenty await,

daz ist umb' alle ir êre,
that is about' all their honor,

ob ir noch wære mêre.»
if of-them still were more.»

«Sun, die dû dâ nennest,
«Son, those thou there namest,

swie wol dû si erkennest
however well thou them knowest

baz dan ich, vil liebez kint,
better than I, very dear child,

doch swie ræze si dâ sint,
yet however fierce they there are,

sô got wil selbe wachen,
so God will himself watch,

sô kan ein scherge machen
so can a bailiff make

daz si tretent swie er wil,
that they step however he will,

wær' ir noch drîstunt als vil.»
were' of-them still three-times as many.»

1255

1260

Gotelint Is Given to Lemberslint

VIII

Helmbrecht offers his sister to Lemberslint and paints the match: three sacks of fine linen, veils, shifts, and furs for a morning-gift, and a wife who will carry his crutches and cut his meat when he is maimed. Her father's hard words have cost her all that. Both children then deny their father — Helmbrecht claiming a well-bred courtier and his godfather, Gotelint a knight — and Gotelint, promised the sacks, agrees to steal away with her brother's messenger. Lemberslint kisses the hand that brings the news and bows to the wind that blows from her.

- 1265 «Vater, daz ich ê tete,
«Father, what I before did,
hin für durch aller kûnege bete
thither forth for all kings' prayer
wolte ich sîn nimmêre tuon.
would I of-it never-more do.
manege gans und manic huon,
many-a goose and many-a hen,
rinder kâse unde fuoter,
cattle cheese and fodder,
1270 hân ich dir und mîner muoter
have I for-thee and for-my mother
gefridet vor mîner sellen vil:
protected from my comrades many:
des ich nû nimmê tuon wil.
which I now no-more do will.
ir sprechet alze sêre
you speak all-too harshly
frumen knaben an ir êre,
to-worthy lads on their honor,
1275 der deheiner nimmer missetuot;
of-them none ever does-wrong;

er roube, er stele, dâst guot.

he rob, he steal, that-is good.

hetet ir'z niht verkallet

had you-it not blabbed-away

noch sô vil ûf uns geschallet,

nor so much upon us railed,

iwer tohter Gotelinde

your daughter Gotelint

die wolte ich Lemberslinde

her would I to-Lemberslint

mîme gesellen hân gegeben;

to-my comrade have given;

sô hete si daz beste leben

so had she the best life

daz ie wîp bî einem man

that ever a-woman with a man

ze der welte ie gewan.

in the world ever won.

kürsen mantel lînât,

fur-coat mantle linen,

als ez diu kirche beste hât,

as it the church best has,

des gæbe er ir den vollen hort,

of-that would-give he to-her the full board,

hetet ir sô scherphiu wort

had you so sharp words

gegen uns niht gesprochen.

against us not spoken.

und woltes' alle wochen

and should-she' every week

ein iteniuewez slegerint

a freshly-new slaughter-beef

ezzen, daz hete Gotelint.

eat, that had Gotelint.

1280

1285

1290

nû hœre, swester Gotelint,

now hear, sister Gotelint,

dô mîn geselle Lemberslint

when my comrade Lemberslint

1295 mich von êrste um dich bat,

me at first for thee asked,

dô sprach ich an der selben stat:

then said I on the same spot:

,ist ez dir beschaffen unde ouch ir,

, (if)-is it for-thee appointed and also for-her,

daz solt dû wol gelouben mir

that shalt thou well believe me

daz ez dich niht sol riuwen.

that it thee not shall rue.

1300 ich weiz si in den triuwen,

I know her in the faithfulness,

des wis gar ân' angest,

of-that be wholly without' dread,

daz dû iht lange hangest,

that thou at-all long hangest,

si slâhe dich mit ir hant abe

she strikes thee with her hand down

und ziehe dich zuo dem grabe

and draws thee to the grave

1305 ûf die wegescheide.

at the crossroads.

wîrouch und mirre beide,

frankincense and myrrh both,

vil sicher dû des wesen maht,

very sure thou of-that be mayst,

dâ mite si dich alle naht

there with she thee all night

umbegât ein ganzez jâr:

walks-around a whole year:

- daz wizze für wâr,
that know for truth,
- si rouchet dîn gebeine,
she censures thy bones,
- diu guote und diu reine.
the good and the pure.
- ob dir diu sælde widervert
if to-thee the fortune befalls
- daz dir diu blintheit wirt beschert,
that to-thee the blindness is granted,
- si wîset dich durch alliu lant
she guides thee through all lands
- wege und stege an ir hant.
ways and paths on her hand.
- wirt dir der fuoz abe geslagen,
is to-thee the foot off struck,
- si sol dir die stelzen tragen
she shall for-thee the crutches carry
- ze dem bette alle morgen.
to the bed every morning.
- wis ouch âne sorgen,
be also without cares,
- ob man dir zuo dem fuoze
if one to-thee besides the foot
- der einen hende buoze,
of-the one hand rides,
- si snîdet dir unz an dînen tôt
she cuts for-thee until at thy death
- beide fleisch unde brôt.
both meat and bread.'
- wider mich sprach dô Lemberslint:
toward me said then Lemberslint:
- ,nimt mich dîn swester Gotelint,
,takes me thy sister Gotelint,

ze morgengâbe ich ir wil geben,
as morning-gift I to-her will give,

daz si dester baz mac leben.
that she so-much better may live.

ich hân voller secke drî,
I have full sacks three,

1330 die sint swære als ein blî.
they are heavy as a lead.

der eine ist vol unversniten
the one is full of-uncut

klein lînîn tuoch in den sîten,
fine linen cloth in the sides,

swer sîn ze koufe gert,
whoever of-it to buy desires,

diu elle ist fünfzehn kriuzer wert:
the ell is fifteen kreuzer worth:

1335 die gâbe sol si prîsen.
the gift shall she praise.

in dem andern ligent rîsen,
in the other lie veils,

vil röckel unde hemde
many little-coats and shifts

(armuot wirt ir fremde,
(poverty becomes to-her strange,

wird' ich ir man und si mîn wîp):
(if)-become' I her husband and she my woman):

1340 daz gibe ch ir allez an ir lip
that give-I to-her all on her body

zwâre an dem nâhesten tage,
truly on the next day,

und immer mêt swaz ich bejage.
and ever more whatever I take.

der dritte sac der ist vol,
the third sack it is full,

ûf und ûf geschoppet wol,

up and up stuffed well,

fritschâl brûnât, vêhe veder,

rich-cloth dark-cloth, spotted fur,

1345

dar under zwô, der ietwêder

there among two, of-them each

mit scharlât ist bedecket,

with scarlet is covered,

und dâ für gestreckt

and there over stretched

einez, heizet swarzer zobel:

one, is-called black sable:

die hân ich in einem tobel

them have I in a ravine

1350

hie nâhen bî verborgen;

here near by hidden;

die gibe ich ir morgen.'

them give I to-her tomorrow.'

daz hât dîn vater undervarn,

that has thy father thwarted,

Gotelint, got müeze dich bewarn!

Gotelint, God may thee preserve!

dîn leben wirt dir sûwer.

thy life becomes to-thee bitter.

1355

sô dich nû ein gebûwer

when thee now a peasant

nimt ze sîner rechten ê,

takes to his lawful marriage,

so geschach nie wîbe als wê.

so happened never to-a-woman as painfully.

bî dem muost dû niuwen

by him must thou pound-flax

1360 dehssen swingen bliuwen

swingle scutch beat

und dar zuo die ruoben graben.

and there to the turnips dig.

des hete dich alles überhaben

of-that would-have thee all spared

der getriuwe Lemberslint.

the faithful Lemberslint.

ouwê, swester Gotelint,

alas, sister Gotelint,

1365 diu sorge muoz mich smerzen,

the care must me pain,

sol an dînem herzen

shall on thy heart

als unedel gebûwer,

so ignoble a-peasant,

des minne dir wirt sûwer,

whose love to-thee becomes bitter,

immer naht entslâfen!

every night fall-asleep!

1370 wâfen, herre, wâfen

help, lord, help

geschrirn über den vater dîn!

cry-out against the father thy!

ja enist er niht der vater mîn:

indeed is he not the father my:

für wâr wil ich dir daz sagen.

for truth will I to-thee that say.

dô mich mîn muoter het getragen

when me my mother had carried

1375 fünfzehn wochen,

fifteen weeks,

dô kom zuo ir gekrochen

then came to her crept

ein vil gefüeger hoveman.

a very well-bred courtier.

von dem erbet mich daz an

from whom descends me that on

und ouch von dem toten mîn

and also from the godfather my

(die bêde müezen sælic sîn)

(they both may blessed be)

daz ich alle mîne tage

that I all my days

mînen muot sô hôhe trage.»

my spirit so high bear.»

Dô sprach sîn swester Gotelint:

Then said his sister Gotelint:

«jâ wæne ouch ich sîn kint

«indeed think also I his child

von der wârheit niht ensî.

in the truth not be.

ez lac mîner muoter bî

there lay my mother by

gesellecliche ein ritter kluoc,

companionably a knight fine,

dô si mich in dem barme truoc.

when she me in the womb carried.

der selbe ritter si gevie,

the same knight her caught,

dô sie den âbent spâte gie

when she the evening late went

suochen kelber in dem lôhe:

to-seek calves in the grove:

des stêt mîn muot sô hôhe.

therefore stands my spirit so high.

1380

1385

1390

lieber bruoder Slintezgeu,

dear brother Slintezgeu,

daz dich mîn trehtîn gefreu»,

that thee my Lord may-gladden»,

1395 sprach sîn swester Gotelint,

said his sister Gotelint,

«schaf daz mir Lemberslint

«bring-about that to-me Lemberslint

werde gegeben ze manne;

be given as husband;

sô schrîet mir mîn pfanne,

so screams for-me my pan,

sô ist gelesen mir der wîn

so is gathered for-me the wine

1400 und sint gefüllet mir diu schrîn,

and are filled for-me the chests,

sô ist gebrouwen mir daz bier

so is brewed for-me the beer

unde ist wol gemalen mir.

and is well ground for-me.

werdent mir die secke drî,

(if)-become to-me the sacks three,

sô bin ich armüete frî,

so am I of-poverty free,

1405 sô hân ich z'ezzen und ze hül;

so have I to-eat and to covering;

sich waz mir gewerren sül!

see what to-me trouble should!

sô bin ich alles des gewert

so am I of-all that granted

des ein wîp an manne gert.

which a woman in a-man desires.

ouch trouwe ich in gewern wol

also trust-myself I him to-grant well

des ein man haben sol

what a man have shall

an einem starken wîbe:

in a strong woman:

daz ist an mînem lîbe;

that is in my body;

swaz er wil daz hân ich.

whatever he wills that have I.

ez sûmet wan mîn vater mich.

it delays only my father me.

wol drî stunt ist vester

fully three times is firmer

mîn lîp dan mîner swester

my body than of-my sister

dô man si ze manne gap.

when one her to a-husband gave.

des morgens gie si âne stap

of-the morning went she without staff

und starp niht von der selben nôt.

and died not of the same distress.

ich wæne ouch wol daz mir der tôt

I think also well that to-me the death

dâ von iht werde ze teile,

there from not-at-all becomes to a-share,

ez sî dan von unheile.

unless-it be then from misfortune.

bruoder mîn, geselle,

brother my, comrade,

daz ich mit dir reden welle,

what I with thee speak would,

durch mînen willen daz verswîc.

for my sake that keep-silent.

1410

1415

1420

1425

ich trite mit dir den smalen stîc

I tread with thee the narrow path

an die kienlîten;

to the pine-slope;

ich gelîge bî sîner sîten;

I lie by his side;

nû wizze daz ich wâge

now know that I risk

1430 vater muoter und mâge.»

father mother and kinsmen.»

Der vater niht der rede vernam

The father nothing of-the talk heard

noch diu muoter alsam.

nor the mother likewise.

der bruoder wart ze râte

the brother came to counsel

mit der swester vil drâte

with the sister very quickly

1435 daz si im volgte von dan.

that she him should-follow from thence.

«ich gibe dich dem selben man,

«I give thee to-the same man,

swie leit ez dînem vater sî.

however grievous it to-thy father be.

du gelîgest Lemberslinde bî

thou liest Lemberslint by

wol nâch dînen êren.

well according-to thy honor.

1440 dîn rîchtuom sol sich mêren.

thy riches shall themselves increase.

wilt dû ez, swester, enden,

wilt thou it, sister, end,

ich wil dir herwider senden

I will to-thee back send

mînen boten dem dû volgen solt.

my messenger whom thou follow shalt.

sît dû im bist und er dir holt,

since thou to-him art and he to-thee gracious,

iu bêden sol gelingen

to-you both shall succeed

1445

vil wol an allen dingen.

very well in all things.

ouch füege ich dine hôchzît

also arrange I thy wedding

daz man durch dinen willen gât

that one for thy sake gives

wambîs unde röcke vil:

doublers and coats many:

für wâr ich dir daz sagen wil.

for truth I to-thee that say will.

1450

swester, nû bereite dich;

sister, now make-ready thyself;

Lemberslint sam tuot er sich.

Lemberslint likewise does he himself.

got hüete dîn, ich wil dâ hin:

God guard of-thee, I will there thither:

mir ist der wirt als ich im bin:

to-me is the host as I to-him am:

muoter, got gesegene dich.»

mother, God bless thee.»

1455

hin fuor er sînen alten strich

away fared he his old road

und sagte Lemberslinde

and told to-Lemberslint

den willen Gotelinde.

the will of-Gotelint.

vor freuden kuste er im die hant,

for joy kissed he to-him the hand,

1460 umbe und umbe an sîn gewant,

round and round on his garment,

er neic gegen dem winde

he bowed toward the wind

der dâ wâte von Gotlinde.

that there blew from Gotelint.

The Wedding, and the Bailiff

IX

Widows and orphans pay for the wedding feast. An old man sets the pair in a ring and puts the vows three times to each, and the other nine serve as marshal, cup-bearer, seneschal, chamberlain, and cook, emptying dish after dish. Gotelint's fear grows as she eats; she would rather have her father's poverty than this, and his cabbage than Lemberslint's fish. Then the judge comes with four men and takes all ten; she is found by a fence, stripped of her bridal gown, and against a bailiff no thief has any defense at all.

Nû hært von grôzer freise.

Now hear of great terror.

manec witewe und weise

many-a widow and orphan

1465 an guote wart geletzet

in goods was injured

und riuwic gesetzet,

and sorrowful set,

dô der helt Lemberslint

when the hero Lemberslint

und sîn gemahel Gotelint

and his betrothed Gotelint

den briutestuol besâzen.

the bridal-seat occupied.

swaz si trunken und âzen,
whatever they drank and ate,

1470

daz wart gesamnet wîten.
that was gathered widely.

bî den selben zîten
in the same times

vil un müezic si beliben:
very busy they remained:

die knaben fuorten unde triben
the lads carried and drove

ûf wâgen unde ûf rossen zuo
on wagons and on horses thither

1475

beide spâte unde fruoz
both late and early

in Lemberslindes vater hûs.
into Lemberslint's father's house.

dô der künic Artûs
when the king Arthur

sîn frouwen Ginovêren nam,
his lady Guinevere took,

diu selbe hôchzît was lam
the same wedding was lame

1480

bî der Lemberslindes:
beside the Lemberslint's:

si lebten niht des windes.
they lived not on-the wind.

dô ez allez wart gereht,
when it all was made-ready,

sînen boten sante Helmbreht,
his messenger sent Helmbreht,

der vil balde gâhte
who very quickly hastened

1485

und im die swester brâhte.
and to-him the sister brought.

Dô Lemberslint het vernomen

When Lemberslint had heard

daz Gotelint was komen,

that Gotelint was come,

balde er gegen ir gienc:

quickly he toward her went:

1490 hœret wie er si enphienc.

hear how he her received.

«willekomen frou Gotelint.»

«welcome lady Gotelint.»

«got lône iu, her Lemberslint.»

«God reward you, sir Lemberslint.»

friuntliche blicke

friendly glances

under in beiden dicke

between them both often

1495 gegen ein ander giengen entwer;

toward one another went across;

er sach dar, sî sach her.

he looked thither, she looked hither.

Lemberslint schôz sînen bolz

Lemberslint shot his bolt

mit gefüegen Worten stolz

with well-turned words proud

gegen Gotelinde:

toward Gotelint:

1500 daz galt si Lemberslinde

that repaid she to-Lemberslint

ûz wîplîchem munde

out-of womanly mouth

sô si beste kunde.

as she best could.

Wir suln Gotelinde

We shall Gotelint

geben Lemberslinde

give to-Lemberslint

und suln Lemberslinde

and shall Lemberslint

1505

geben Gotelinde.

give to-Gotelint.

ûf stuont ein alter grîse,

up stood an old graybeard,

der was der worte wîse,

he was of-the words wise,

der kunde sô getâniu dinc;

he knew so fashioned things;

er staltes' beide in einen rinc;

he set-them' both into a ring;

1510

er sprach ze Lemberslinde:

he said to Lemberslint:

«welt ir Gotelinde

«will you Gotelint

êlichen nemen, sô sprechet Jâ.»

lawfully take, so say Yes.»

«gerne», sprach der knabe sâ.

«gladly», said the lad at-once.

er frâgte in aber ander stunt:

he asked him again a-second time:

1515

«gerne», sprach des knaben munt.

«gladly», said the lad's mouth.

ze dem dritten mâle er dô sprach:

at the third time he then spoke:

«nemt ir si gerne?» der knabe jach:

«take you her gladly?» the lad said:

«sô mir sêle unde lîp,

«so-help me soul and body,

- 1520 ich nim gerne ditze wîp.»
I take gladly this woman.»
 dô sprach er zuo Gotlinde:
then said he to Gotelint:
 «welt ir Lemberslinde
«will you Lemberslint
 gerne nemen z'einem man?»
gladly take as-a husband?»
 «jâ, herre, ob mir sîn got gan.»
«yes, lord, if to-me of-him God grants.»
- 1525 «nemt ir in gerne?» sprach ab er:
«take you him gladly?» said again he:
 «gerne, herre! gebt mir'n her.»
«gladly, lord! give to-me-him hither.»
 ze dem dritten mâle: «welt ir'n?»
at the third time: «will you-him?»
 «gerne, herre; nû gebt mir'n.»
«gladly, lord; now give to-me-him.»
 dô gap er Gotelinde
then gave he Gotelint
- 1530 ze wîbe Lemberslinde
to woman to-Lemberslint
 und gap Lemberslinde
and gave Lemberslint
 ze manne Gotelinde.
as husband to-Gotelint.
 si sungen alle an der stat:
they sang all on the spot:
 ûf den fuoz er ir trat.
upon the foot he to-her trod.

Nû ist bereit daz ezzen.

Now is ready the meal.

1535

wir suln niht vergezzen

we shall not forget

wir enschaffen ambetliute

we appoint officers

dem briutegomen und der briute.

for-the bridegroom and for-the bride.

Slintezgeu was marschal;

Slintezgeu was marshal;

der fulte den rossen wol ir balc.

he filled for-the horses well their hide.

1540

sô was schenke Slickenwider.

so was cup-bearer Slickenwider.

Hellesac der sazte nider

Hellesac he seated down

die fremden und die kunden;

the strange-ones and the known-ones;

ze truhsæzen wart er funden,

as seneschal was he found,

der nie wart gewære.

who never became truthful.

1545

Rütelschrîn was kamerære.

Rütelschrîn was chamberlain.

kuchenmeister was Küefrâz;

kitchen-master was Küefrâz;

der gap swaz man von kuchen az,

he gave whatever one from kitchen ate,

swie man'z briet oder sôt.

however one-it roasted or boiled.

Müschenkelch der gap daz brôt.

Müschenkelch he gave the bread.

1550

diu hôchzît was niht arm.

the wedding was not poor.

Wolvesguome und Wolvesdarm

Wolvesguome and Wolvesdarm

unde Wolvesdrüzzel

and Wolvesdrüzzel

lârten manege schüzzel

emptied many-a bowl

1555 und manegen becher wîten

and many-a cup wide

ze den selben hôczîten.

at the same wedding.

vor den knaben swant diu spîse

before the lads vanished the food

in aller der wîse

in all the manner

als ein wint vil drâte

as a wind very swiftly

1560 si ab dem tische wâte.

it from the table blew.

ich wæne ieglicher æze

I think each would-eat

swaz im sîn truhsæze

whatever to-him his seneschal

von kuchen dar trüege.

from kitchen thither carried.

ob der hunt iht nüege

whether the dog at-all gnawed

1565 nâch in ab dem beine?

after them off the bone?

daz tet er vil kleine;

that did he very little;

wan ez saget ein man wîse:

for it says a man wise:

«ieglich mensche sîner spîse

«every person to-his food

unmâzen sêre gâhet

beyond-measure greatly hastens

sô im sîn ende nâhet.»

when to-him his end draws-near.»

1570

dâ von gâhtens' umbe daz,

there from hastened-they' for that,

ez was ir jungestez maz

it was their last meal

daz si immer mêre gâzen

that they ever more ate

od frœlîche gesâzen.

or joyfully sat.

Dô sprach diu brût Gotelint:

Then said the bride Gotelint:

1575

«ouwê, lieber Lemberslint,

«alas, dear Lemberslint,

mir grûset in der hiute!

to-me shudders in the skin!

ich fürhte fremde liute

I fear strange people

uns ze schaden nâhe sîn.

to-us for harm near be.

ey vater unde muoter mîn,

ah father and mother my,

daz ich von iu beiden

that I from you both

sô verre bin gescheiden!

so far am parted!

1580

ich fürhte daz mir wecke

I fear that for-me awaken

die Lemberslindes secke

the Lemberslint's sacks

1585 vil schaden und unêre;

much harm and dishonor;

des fürhte ich vil sêre.

of-that fear I very greatly.

wie wol ich dâ heime wære!

how well I there at-home were!

mir ist der muot sô swære;

to-me is the spirit so heavy;

mînes vater armuot

of-my father's poverty

1590 næme ich michels baz für guot

would-take I much better for good

danne ich bin mit sorgen hie;

than I am with cares here;

wan ich hôrte sagen ie

for I heard say ever

die liute algemeine

the people all-together

daz dem würde kleine

that to-him would-become little

1595 der ze vil welle.

who too much wishes.

diu girscheit ze helle

the greed to hell

in daz abgründe

into the abyss

vellet von der sünde.

falls by the sin.

ich verdenke mich ze spâte.

I bethink myself too late.

ouwê daz ich nû sô drâte

alas that I now so quickly

1600

gevolget her mîm bruoder hân!

followed hitber my brother have!

des muoz ich riuwic bestân.»

of-that must I sorrowful remain.»

dar nâch vil schiere sach diu brût,

there after very soon saw the bride,

daz si dâ heime ir vater krût

that she there at-home her father's cabbage

het gâz ob sînem tische

had eaten at his table

1605

für Lemberslindes vische.

before Lemberslint's fishes.

Dô si nâch dem ezzen

When they after the meal

wâr ein wîle gesezzen

had a while sat

und die spilliute

and the minstrels

enphiengen von der briute

received from the bride

1610

ir gâbe und von dem briutegomen,

their gift and from the bridegroom,

dar nâch zehant sach man komen

there after at-once saw one come

den rihter selpfünfte.

the judge himself-fifth.

mit der sigenünfte

with the victory

gesigete er den zehen an.

conquered he the ten upon.

1615

der in den oven niht entran,

who into the oven not escaped,

der slouf under die banc.

he slipped under the bench.

ieglich für den andern dranc.

each before the other pressed.

der ie viere niht enflôch,

who ever (the)-four not fled,

1620 des schergen kneht aleine in zôch

the bailiff's servant alone him drew

her für bî dem hâre.

hither forth by the hair.

daz sage ich iu für wâre,

that say I to-you for truth,

ein rehter diep, swie küene er sî,

a true thief, however bold he be,

slüege er eines tages drî,

should-slay he in-one day three,

1625 daz er sich vor dem schergen

that he himself before the bailiff

nimmer mac erwerben.

never can defend.

sus wurden si gebunden,

thus were they bound,

die zehen, an den stunden

the ten, at the hour

mit vil starken banden

with very strong bonds

1630 von des schergen handen.

by the bailiff's hands.

Gotelint vlôs ir briutegewant.

Gotelint lost her bridal-gown.

bî einem zûne man si vant

by a fence one her found

in vil swacher küste.

in very poor plight.

si het ir beide brüste

she had her both breasts

mit handen verdecket.

with hands covered.

1635

si was unsanfte erschrecket.

she was roughly frightened.

ob ir anders iht geschæhe,

whether to-her otherwise anything happened,

der sage ez der daz sæhe.

he say it who that saw.

got ist ein wunderære;

God is a wonder-worker;

daz hoeret an dem mære.

that hear in the tale.

1640

slüege ein diep aleine ein her,

should-slay a thief alone an army,

gein dem schergen hât er keine wer:

against the bailiff has he no defense:

als er den von verre siht,

as he him from afar sees,

zehant erlischet im daz licht;

at-once goes-out for-him the light;

sîn rôtiu varwe wirt im gel.

his red color becomes to-him yellow.

1645

swie küene er ê wær' und swie snel,

however bold he before were' and however swift,

in væht ein lamer scherge.

him catches a lame bailiff.

sîn snelheit und sîn kerge

his swiftness and his cunning

die sint im alle gelegen,

they are for-him all fallen,

sô got wil selbe der räche phlegen.

when God will himself the vengeance tend.

1650

The Judgment

X

The ten crawl to the court of law under the hides they stole, and nine are hanged. Helmbrecht is the bailiff's tithe: they put out his eyes and strike off a hand and a foot, avenging the father and mother he had insulted. Led home by a staff and a boy, he is met at his own door with the French greeting he brought back from court, told the lodging is wanted, and driven out; only his mother puts a loaf into his hand as into a child's, and the peasants taunt him for leaving the plow.

Nû hœret mæren sprûchen,

Now listen to-remarkable sayings,

wie die diebe krûchen

how the thieves crept

für gerihte mit ir bûrden

before court-of-law with their burdens

dâ si erhangen wûrden.

where they hanged would-be.

1655 Gotelint wart ungefreut,

Gotelint became un-gladdened,

dô Lemberslint zwô rindes heut'

when to-Lemberslint two of-ox hides'

wurden an den stunden

were at the hour

ûf sînen hals gebunden.

upon his neck bound.

sîn bûrde was diu ringest.

his burden was the lightest.

1660 dâ von truoc er daz minnest,

there from bore he the least,

durch des briutegomen êre.

for the bridegroom's honor.

die andern truogen mêr und mêre,

the others bore more and more,

ez truoc sîn geswîe
it bore his brother-in-law

rûher hiute drîe
of-rough hides three

vor dem schergen; daz was reht:
before the bailiff; that was right:

daz was Slintezgeu Helmbreht.
that was Slintezgeu Helmbreht.

ieglîch truoc sîn diube mit im hin;
each bore his theft with him away;

daz was des rihters gewin.
that was the judge's gain.

Dô wart vûrsprechen niht gegeben.
Then was an-advocate not given.

der in lengen wil ir leben,
he-who to-them lengthen will their life,

dem kürze got daz sîne;
to-him may-shorten God the his;

daz sint die wûnsche mîne.
these are the wishes my.

ich weiz den rihter sô gemuot,
I know the judge so minded,

ein wilder wolf, gæb' im der guot,
a wild wolf, should-give' to-him that-one goods,

und erbizze er allen liuten vihe,
and should-bite-to-death he to-all people beasts,

von der wârheit ich des gihe,
in the truth I of-that avow,

er lieze in umbe guot genesen,
he would-let him for goods live,

swie des doch niht solte wesen.
however of-that yet nothing should be.

der scherge dô die niune hie,
the bailiff then the nine hanged,

1665

1670

1675

- 1680 den einen er dô leben lie
the one he then live let
 (daz was sîn zehende und sîn reht);
(that was his tithe and his due);
 der hiez Slintezgeu Helmbreht.
he was-called Slintezgeu Helmbreht.
 Swaz geschehen sol daz geschiht:
Whatever happen shall that happens:
 got dem vil selten übersiht
God to-him very seldom overlooks
- 1685 der tuot des er niht tuon sol.
who does what he not do shall.
 daz schein an Helmbrehte wol,
that showed in Helmbreht well,
 an dem man den vater rach;
in whom one the father avenged;
 der scherge im ûz diu ougen stach.
the bailiff to-him out the eyes put.
 dannoch was der rache niht genuoc;
even-then was the vengeance not enough;
- 1690 man rach die muoter, daz man sluoc
one avenged the mother, in-that one struck
 im ab die hant und einen fuoz.
from-him off the hand and one foot.
 dar umbe daz er swachen gruoze
there for that he a-poor greeting
 vater unde muoter bôt,
to-father and to-mother offered,
 des leit er schande unde nôt.
for-that suffered he disgrace and distress.
- 1695 do er sprach zuo dem vater sîn
when he said to the father his
 «waz saket ir gebûrikîn?»
«what say you little-peasant?»

und sîn muoter hiez «gunêrtez wîp»,
and his mother called «a-disbonored woman»,

von den sünden leit sîn lîp
for the sins suffered his body

dise maneger slahte nôt,
this of-many a-kind distress,

daz im tûsent stunt der tô
that for-him a-thousand times the death

1700

lieber möhte sîn gewesen
dearer might have been

dan sîn schämlich genesen.
than his shameful surviving.

Helmbrecht, der diep blinde,
Helmbrecht, the thief blind,

schiet von Gotelinde
parted from Gotelint

ûf einer wegescheide
at a crossroads

1705

mit riuwe und mit leide.
with rue and with sorrow.

den diep blinden Helmbrecht
the thief blind Helmbrecht

brâht' ein stap und ein kneht
brought' a staff and a servant

heim in sînes vater hûs.
home into of-his father's house.

er behielt in niht, er treip in ûz,
he kept him not, he drove him out,

1710

sîne swære er im niht buozte,
his grief he to-him not relieved,

hœret wie er in gruozte.
hear how he him greeted.

«dêû sal, her blinde!
«God save, sir blind-one!

dô ich was ingesinde

when I was a-retainer

1715 ze hove wîlen (des ist lanc),

at court formerly (of-that is long),

dô lernte ich disen antvanc.

then learned I this welcome.

gêr ir nû, her blindekîn!

go you now, sir little-blind-one!

ich weiz wol, an iu mac gesîn

I know well, in you can be

swes ein blinder knabe gert.

whatever a blind lad desires.

1720 ir sît ouch dâ ze Walhen wert.

you are also there in Italy worthy.

den gruoze sult ir von mir haben,

the greeting shall you from me have,

alsô grûeze ich blinde knaben.

so greet I blind lads.

waz touc langez teidinc?

what avails long parley?

got weiz, her blinder jungelinc,

God knows, sir blind youth,

1725 die herberge ir mir rûmet.

the lodging you for-me clear,

ist daz ir iuch sûmet,

(if)-is that you yourself delay,

ich lâze iuch mînen frîman

I let you my free-man

slahen daz nie blinde gewan

beat so-that never a-blind-one got

von slegen alsölhe nôr.

from blows such distress.

ez wære ein verworhtez brôt

it were a wasted loaf

1730

daz ich hînt mit iu verlûr.

that I tonight with you should-lose.

ir hebt iuch ûz für die tür!»

you take yourself out before the door!»

«Neinâ, herre, lât mich betagen!»

«No-no, lord, let me stay-the-day!»

sprach der blinde. «ich wil iu sagen

said the blind-one. «I will to-you say

wie ich bin genennet;

how I am named;

1735

durch got mich erkennet.»

for God's-sake me acknowledge.»

er sprach: «nû saget drâte.

he said: «now say quickly.

zoget iuwer, ez ist spâte.

hurry yourself, it is late.

ir sult iu suochen andern wirt:

you shall for-you seek another host:

mîn hant mit gâbe iuch gar verbirt.»

my hand with gift you wholly forgoes.»

1740

beidiu mit leide und mit schamen

both with sorrow and with shame

seit' er dem vater sînen namen,

told' he to-the father his name,

«herre, ich bin'z iuwer kint.»

«lord, I am-it your child.»

«und ist der knabe worden blint

«and is the lad become blind

der sich dâ nante Slintezgeu?

who himself there named Slintezgeu?

1745

nû vorht ir niht des schergen dreu
now feared you not the bailiff's threat

noch alle rihtære,
nor all judges,

ob ir noch mêr wære.
if of-them still more were.

hei waz ir îsens âzet,
hey what you of-iron ate,

1750 do ir ûf dem hengste sâzet
when you on the steed sat

dar umbe ich gap mâniu rinder!
there for I gave my cattle!

unde kriechet ir nû blinder,
and creep you now blind,

daz enwirt mir nimmer zorn.
that becomes to-me never anger.

mich riwet mân lode und mân korn,
me rues my loden and my corn,

1755 sît mir sô tiuwer ist daz brôt.
since to-me so costly is the bread.

und læget ir vor hunger tât,
and should-lie you from hunger dead,

ich gibe iu nimmer umbe ein grûz.
I give to-you never for a grain.

ir sult iuch balde heben ûz
you shall yourself quickly take out

und tuot nimmer mêre
and make never more

1760 ze mir die widerkêre.»
to me the returning.»

Dô sprach aber der blinde

Then said again the blind-one

«sît ir mân ze kinde

«since you of-me as child

geruochet nimmêre,

deign never-more,

durch die gotes êre

for the God's honor

sult ir dem tiuvel an gesigen:

shall you the devil over conquer:

lât mich als einen dürftigen

let me as a beggar

in iuerm hûse kriechen;

in your house creep;

swaz ir einem armen siechen

whatever you to-a poor sick-one

welt geben in der minne,

will give in the love,

durch got daz gebt mir hinne.

for God's-sake that give to-me here-within.

mir sint die lantliute gram:

to-me are the country-folk hostile:

leider nû sît ir mir sam.

alas now are you to-me likewise.

ich enmac niht genesen,

I can not survive,

welt ir mir ungenædec wesen.»

will you to-me ungracious be.»

Der wirt hõnlachte,

The host scorn-laughed,

swie im sîn herze krachte

however to-him his heart cracked

(er was sîn verch und sîn kint,

(he was his flesh and his child,

1765

1770

1775

swie er doch stüende vor im blint).

however he yet stood before him blind).

«nû fuort ir dwerhes die welt;

«now fared you crosswise the world;

1780 iwer meidem gie nie enzelt,

your gelding went never at-amble,

er dravete unde schûfte.

it trotted and galloped.

manec herze von iu sûfte.

many-a heart from you sighed.

ir wâret sô ungehûr.

you were so monstrous.

manic wîp und gebûr

many-a woman and peasant

1785 sint von iu habe worden frî.

are by you of-goods become free.

nû sprechet ob die troume drî

now say whether the dreams three

an iu sint bewæret.

in you are proved.

noch hœher ez sich mæret,

still higher it itself grows,

daz iu wirt wirser danne wê.

that to-you becomes worse than woe.

1790 ê der vierde troum ergê,

before the fourth dream comes-about,

hebt iuch balde für die tür.

take yourself quickly before the door.

kneht, sperre, stôz den rigel für;

servant, bar, thrust the bolt across;

ich wil hînaht hân gemach.

I will tonight have quiet.

den ich mit ougen nie gesach,

whom I with eyes never saw,

den behielt' ich unz an mînen tôt,
him would-keep' I until at my death,

1795

ê ich iu gæbe ein halbez brôt.»
before I to-you gave a half loaf.»

allez daz er het getân,
all that he had done,

daz itewîzt' er dem blinden man.
that reproached' he to-the blind man.

er was gar sîn schiuhe.
he was wholly his abomination.

«sich, blinden kneht, nû ziuhe
«see, blind-one's servant, now drag

1800

in von mir der sunnen haz.»
him from me the sun's hatred.»

er sluoc den kneht: «nû habe dir daz.
he struck the servant: «now have to-thee that.

dînem meister tæt ich sam,
to-thy master would-do I likewise,

wan daz ich mich des scham,
except that I myself of-it shame,

ob ich blinden slüege.
if I a-blind-one should-strike.

1805

ich bin wol sô gefüege
I am indeed so well-bred

daz ich'z kan vermîden.
that I-it can forbear.

doch mac ez sich verrîden.
yet may it itself twist.

des hebt iuch, ungetriuwer Rûz,
therefore take yourself, faithless Russian,

balde für die tür ûz,
quickly before the door out,

1810

ich ahte niht ûf iuwer nôt.»
I heed not upon your distress.»

im gap diu muoter doch ein brôt

to-him gave the mother yet a loaf

in die hant als einem kinde.

into the hand as to-a child.

hin gie der diep blinde.

away went the thief blind.

1815 swâ er über velt gie,

wherever he over field went,

dehein gebûre daz verlie,

no peasant that left-undone,

er schrire in an und sînen kneht:

he unless-cried him at and his servant:

«hâhâ, diep Helmbrecht,

«ba-ba, thief Helmbrecht,

hetest dû gebouwen alsam ich,

hadst thou tilled even-as I,

1820 sô zûge man nû niht blinden dich.»

so would-drag one now not blind thee.»

alsô leit er ein jâr nôt

so suffered he one year distress

unz er von hâhen leit den tôten.

until he from hanging suffered the death.

The Peasants Take Him

XI

A peasant splitting withes knows him and calls the others: he had taken a cow from one, stripped another and his wife, broken a third's storehouse, shaken a fourth's child out into the snow, and ravished a fifth's child. They beat him and tear the cap to shreds — of the parrots, larks, hawks, and doves sewn on it not a penny wide is left — let him say his confession over a crumb of earth, and hang him on a tree. Wernher ends by warning self-willed children and asking prayers for himself.

Ich sage iu wie daz geschach.

I tell to-you how that happened.

ein gebûre in ersach

a peasant him saw

dô er gie zuo einer frist

when he went at one time

durch einen walt um sîne genist.

through a wood for his sustenance.

der gebûre kloup dâ wit,

the peasant split there withes,

ander gebûren ouch dâ mit.

other peasants also there with.

daz was eines morgens fruô.

that was one morning early.

dem hete Helmbrecht eine kuo

from-him had Helmbrecht a cow

genommen von siben binden.

taken from seven tethers.

do er sach in alsô blinden,

when he saw him so blind,

er sprach zuo sînen holden

he said to his fellows

ob si im helfen wolden.

whether they him help would.

«entriuwen», sprach der eine,

«in-faith», said the one,

«ich zerre in alsô kleine

«I tear him so small

sam daz in der sunne vert,

as that-which in the sun fares,

ist daz mir in nieman wert.

(if)-is that to-me him no-one refuses.

1825

1830

1835

mir und mînem wîbe

from-me and from-my woman

1840 zôch er ab dem lîbe

drew he off the body

unser beider gewant.

of-us both raiment.

er ist mîn vil rehtez pfant.»

he is my very lawful pledge.»

dô sprach der dritte dâ bî:

then said the third there by:

«ob sîn eines wæren drî,

«if of-him alone were three,

1845 die wolte ich tœten eine.

them would I kill alone.

er vil unreine,

he very unclean,

er brach mir ûf mînen glêt

he broke for-me open my storehouse

und nam daz ich dâ inne hêt.»

and took what I there within had.»

der vierde der den wît kloup,

the fourth who the withe split,

1850 der bidemt' vor girde alsam ein loup;

he trembled' for eagerness like a leaf;

er sprach: «ich briche in als ein huon.

he said: «I break him like a hen.

von allem rehte ich daz tuon.

by all right I that do.

er stiez mîn kint in einen sac

he thrust my child into a sack

dô ez slâfende lac.

when it sleeping lay.

1855 er want ez in ein bet.

he wound it into a bed.

ez was naht dô er daz tet.

it was night when he that did.

dô ez erwachete unde schrê,

when it awoke and cried,

dô schutte er'z ûz an den snê.

then shook he-it out onto the snow.

sînen ende het ez dâ genomen,

its end would-have it there taken,

wær' ich im niht ze helfe komen.»

were' I to-it not to help come.»

«entriuwen», sprach der fünfte,

«in-faith», said the fifth,

«ich freu mich sîner künfte

«I rejoice myself of-his coming

sô daz ich mînes herzen spil

so that I my heart's sport

hiute an im geschouwen wil.

today on him behold will.

er nôtzôgete mir mîn kint.

he ravished from-me my child.

wær' er noch drî stunt alsô blint,

were' he still three times as blind,

ich sol in hâhen an den ast.

I shall him hang on the bough.

selbe ich im kûme enbrast

myself I from-him barely escaped

beide nacket unde blôz.

both naked and bare.

wære er als ein hûs sô grôz,

were he as a house so big,

ich wurde an im errochen,

I become on him avenged,

1860

1865

1870

sît er sich hât verkrochen

since he himself has crept-away

in disen walt sô tiefen.»

into this wood so deep.»

«dar nâher», si dô riefen

«thither nearer», they then called

1875 und kêrten alle rehte

and turned all straight

gegen Helmbrehte.

toward Helmbrecht.

dô si sich wol errâchen

when they themselves well avenged

an im mit slegen, si sprâchen:

on him with blows, they said:

«nû hûete der hûben, Helmbrecht!»

«now guard of-the cap, Helmbrecht!»

1880 daz ir dar vor des schergen kneht

which of-it there before the bailiff's servant

het lâzen ungerüeret,

had left untouched,

daz wart nû gar zerfüeret.

that was now wholly torn-apart.

daz was ein griuwelîch dinc.

that was a horrible thing.

sô breit als ein pfenninc

so broad as a penny

1885 beleip ir niht beinander.

remained of-it nothing together.

siteche und galander,

parrots and crested-larks,

sparwære und tûrteltûben,

sparrow-hawks and turtle-doves,

die genâten ûf der hûben,

which were-sewn upon the cap,

wurden gestreut ûf den wec.

were strewn upon the way.

hie lac ein loc, dort ein flec

here lay a lock, there a patch

1890

der hûben und des hâres.

of-the cap and of-the hair.

gesagte ich nie iht wâres,

(if)-told I never anything true,

doch sult ir mir gelouben

yet shall you me believe

daz mære von der houben,

the tale of the cap,

wie kleine man si zarte.

how small one it tore.

1895

ir gesâhet nie swarte

you saw never a-scalp

ûf houbete alsô kalwe.

on a-head so bald.

sîn reidez hâr daz valwe

his curling hair the blond

sach man in swachem werde

saw one in poor worth

ligen ûf der erde.

lying upon the earth.

1900

daz wac si iedoch vil lîhte.

that weighed for-them yet very lightly.

si liezen in sîne bîhte

they let him his confession

den müedinc dô sprechen.

the wretch then speak.

einer begunde brechen

one began to-break

ein brôsemen von der erden.

a crumb from the earth.

1905

dem vil gar unwerden

to-the very wholly worthless-one

gap er si z'einer stiuwer

gave he it as-a support

für daz hellefiuwer,

against the hell-fire,

und hiengen in an einen boum.

and hanged him on a tree.

1910 ich wæne, des vater troum,

I think, the father's dream,

daz er sich hie bewære.

that it itself here proves.

hie endet sich daz mære.

here ends itself the tale.

Swâ noch selpherrischiu kint

Wherever still self-willed children

bî vater unde muoter sint,

by father and mother are,

1915 die sîn gewarnet hie mite.

let-them be warned here with.

begênt si Helmbrehtes site,

(if)-practice they Helmbreht's ways,

ich erteile in daz mit rehte,

I adjudge to-them that with right,

in geschehe als Helmbrehte.

to-them happen as to-Helmbreht.

ûf den strâzen und ûf den wegen

on the roads and on the ways

1920 was diu wagenvart gelegen:

had the wagon-traffic lain:

die varent alle nû mit fride,

they fare all now with peace,

sît Helmbreht ist an der wide.

since Helmbreht is on the with.

nû seht ûf und umbe:

now look up and about:

râte iu wol ein tumbe,

(if)-counsels you well a fool,

dem volgt und ouch des wîsen rât.

him follow and also the wise-man's counsel.

1925

waz ob Helmbreht noch hât

what if Helmbreht still has

etewâ junge knehtel?

somewhere young little-lads?

die werdent ouch Helmbrehtel.

they become also little-Helmbrehts.

vor den gib ich iu niht fride,

against them give I to-you no peace,

si komen danne ouch an die wide.

unless-they come then also on the withe.

1930

swer iu ditze mære lese,

whoever to-you this tale reads,

bitet daz got genædic wese

pray that God gracious be

im unde dem tihtære,

to-him and to-the poet,

Wernher dem gartenære.

Wernher the gardener.

ANONYMOUS

Moriz von Craûn

Moriz of Craon

How Knighthood Came from Troy to Greece and Rome

I

Knighthood began among the Greeks at the siege of Troy, where Hector and his brothers held their field until Hector fell; Dares wrote each night what he had watched by day, and even his tale falls short. Greece wearied of the cost and lost it, and it passed to Rome, which no city equaled and where Caesar subdued the lands. Then came Nero, who had himself dosed until a toad grew in him so that he might know what a woman bears, had his mother cut open to see where he came from, and burned Rome to see Troy.

Ir habet dicke vernomen

You have often heard

und ist iu mit rede für komen

and is to-you with speech forth come

von wærlîchem mære

of a-truthful tale

daz ritterschaft ie wære

that knighthood ever were

wert und müeze immer wesen.

worthy and may ever be.

5

wir hoeren an den buochen lesen

we hear in the books read

wâ man ir von êrste began

where one of-it at first began

und wâ si sider <hin> bekan.

and where it afterward <thither> came.

Kriechen heizet daz lant

Greece is-called the land

dâ man den list alrêrste vant

where one the art first-of-all found

10

der ze ritterschaft gehœret:

which to knighthood belongs:

dâ wart si dô zerstoeret.

there was it then destroyed.

ze Kriechen huop sich ritterschaft

in Greece raised itself knighthood

dô si Troie mit kraft

when they Troy with force

15 besâzen durch ein frouwen.

besieged for a lady.

dâ mohte man schouwen

there could one behold

manegen Kriechen nâch sage

many-a Greek after report

die gelîche wurben alle tage

who alike strove all days

umbe ritterlîchen prîs.

for knightly praise.

20 Ector und Parîs

Hector and Paris

Elenus und Deiphobus

Helenus and Deiphobus

und ir bruoder Troilus,

and their brother Troilus,

die küenen nôtvesten,

the bold steadfast,

die werten den gesten

they defended against-the strangers

25 vor der mûren dicke ir velt

before the wall often their field

und gâben solich widergelt

and gave such requital

den hôchvertigen Kriechen

to-the haughty Greeks

daz si tôten und siechen

that they dead and sick

wider fuorten ze here.

back carried to camp.

der Kriechen sturm und der were

the Greeks' assault and the defense

30

reichte nie für wâr,

sufficed never for truth,

si herten alsô manic jâr.

they held-out so many-a year.

ich saget iu wol für baz

I would-tell to-you well further on

von Troie. waz hulfe daz?

of Troy. what would-help that?

wir mugen ez lâzen belîben:

we may it let remain:

35

ez kunde nieman gar geschrîben.

it could no-one wholly write.

Dares, der dâ <mite> was,

Dares, who there <with> was,

der die naht schreip unde las

who the night wrote and read

swaz des tages dâ geschach,

whatever of-the day there happened,

als erz mit ougen ane sach,

as he-it with eyes upon looked,

40

dem gebristet an dem mære

to-him is-lacking in the tale

wie die Troiære

how the Trojans

werten ir urbor

defended their domain

die wîle Ector

the while Hector

lebete und ir aller pflac.

lived and of-them all cared.

45

als aber Ector gelac,

when however Hector fell,

dô swachet ir êre

then weakened their honor

tägelichen sêre:

daily greatly:

sîn herze ir aller herze was.

his heart of-them all heart was.

50 Pandarus und Eneas

Pandarus and Aeneas

die wâren ouch dâ vorne

they were also there in-front

ofte mit zorne

often with wrath

dâ man heldes werc worhte.

where one a-hero's work wrought.

manic strît âne vorhte

many-a fight without fear

55 was vor Troie dicke,

was before Troy often,

daz man die swertes blicke

that one the sword's flashes

niht wol durchsehen mohte.

not well see-through could.

ein zage dâ wênic tohte

a coward there little availed

dâ die wîganden

where the warriors

60 ûz manegen landen

out-of many lands

muosten zallen zîten

must at-all times

an die burgære strîten,

against the townsmen fight,

swan si wolten ime tage.
whenever they would in-the day.

dâ starp vil maneger zage
there died very many-a coward

von vorhten, âne wunden,
from fear, without wounds,

die er hâte zallen stunden.
which he had at-all hours.

dô Troiære Ectorn verlurn,
when Trojans Hector lost,

den sie ze trôste alle erkurn,
whom they for comfort all chose,

dô swachte Troie allen tac,
then weakened Troy every day,

unz si wüeste gelac.
until it waste lay.

ze Troie geschach wunder.
at Troy happened wonders.

daz ist ein rede besunder,
that is a account apart,

der ich gerne ein ende funde
of-which I gladly an end would-find

mit worten, ob ich kunde:
with words, if I could:

dar umbe ichs überhaben hân,
there for I-of-it left-aside have,

daz ist durch fremde getân.
that is for strangeness done.

Ritterschaft mac ze merken sîn
Knightbood may to note be

(daz wart ze den Kriechen schîn)
(that became among the Greeks manifest)

wan dâ man si minnet:
except where one her loves:

65

70

75

- 80 der si vêhen beginnet,
who her to-bate begins,
 den flühet ouch sie zehant.
him flees also she at-once.
 alsô tet der Kriechen lant.
so did the Greeks' land.
 dô sie des schaden dâ verdrôz,
when them the loss there wearied,
 dô wart ir daz lant blôz.
then became of-her the land bare.
- 85 ritterschaft und êre
knighthood and honor
 diu muoz kosten sêre.
it must cost dearly.
 daz ist ein site unmâzen alt,
that is a custom beyond-measure old,
 der doch nie alters entgalt;
which yet never of-age suffered;
 er niuwet aller tâgêlich,
it renews all daily,
- 90 <er breite ie> und breitet sich
<it spread ever> and spreads itself
 wîten after lande.
widely through lands.
 êre unde schande
honor and disgrace
 fliehent ein ander.
flee one another.
 swaz der biderbe Alexander
whatever the worthy Alexander
- 95 der Kriechen lande betwanc,
the Greeks' lands subdued,

(daz verluren si âne danc)

(that lost they without will)

daz was ir bôsheit schulde.

that was their wickedness' fault.

man zinste in, nû gerent si hulde

one paid-tribute to-them, now beg they favor

(daz ist doch ein ungelîchez leben);

(that is yet an unequal life);

man gap in, nû müezens geben.

one gave to-them, now must-they give.

von diu möht man gern êre hân:

from that might one gladly honor have:

si lônet âne valschen wân.

she rewards without false hope.

Ez was dô mit kreften

There was then in power

noch von hêrscheften

or of lordships

kein stat in den rîchen

no city in the realms

diu Rôme möhte gelîchen:

that Rome might equal:

Rôme was diu mære.

Rome was the famous-one.

die stolzen Rômære

the proud Romans

100

105

ritterschaft begunnen

knighthood began

110 als si sich versunnen

when they themselves bethought

waz guoter freude dar an lac.

what good joy there in lay.

diu bezzerte sich allen tac.

it bettered itself every day.

ze Rôme ritterschaft beleip

in Rome knighthood remained

dô mans von Kriechen vertreip.

when one-it from Greece drove.

115 zehant dô sie <was> komen dar,

at-once when she <bad> come thither,

Julius Cesar

Julius Caesar

der enpfenc si ritterliche

he received her knightly

und twanc alliu rîche,

and subdued all realms,

daz im dienten diu lant.

that to-him served the lands.

120 ein lop erkôs sîn hant

a praise won his hand

daz er immer mê hât

which he ever more has

die wîle disiu werlt stât.

the while this world stands.

swen sô lêret sîn muot

whomever so teaches his spirit

daz er gerne daz beste tuot,

that he gladly the best does,

125 dem gelinget dar an.

to-him succeeds there in.

sô ist vil maneger man

so is very many-a man

in der werlte den ich sihe

in the world whom I see

âne êre als ein vihe.

without honor as a beast.

waz sol dem ze lebene?

what avails to-him to live?

der verswendet vergebene

who squanders in-vain

beide gnâde unde rât

both grace and means

den got der werlt gegeben hât.

which God to-the world given has.

Rôme stuont mit êren

Rome stood with honor

biz an den künic Nêren,

until at the king Nero,

der sider über lanc kan.

who afterward over long came.

der was ein harte übel man,

he was a very evil man,

wan erz allez volbrâhte

for he-it all accomplished

daz im daz herze erdâhte,

that to-him the heart devised,

ez wære übel oder guot.

it were evil or good.

swaz im geriet sîn muot,

whatever to-him counseled his spirit,

des kunde in niht erwenden,

of-that could him nothing turn,

er müeste ez mit werken enden.

he must it with deeds finish.

130

135

140

er liez im tuon als einem wîp
he let to-himself do as to-a woman

und hâte ouch man für wîbes lîp.
and bad also a-man for a-woman's body.

145 vernemet wie er einen tac
hear how he one day

allez denkende lac
all thinking lay

wie einem wîbe wære
how to-a woman were

diu trüege und kint gebære.
who carried and a-child brought-forth.

des wunderte in sêre.
of-that wondered him greatly.

150 dô sante der künic Nêre
then sent the king Nero

einen boten drâte
a messenger swiftly

nâch sînem arzâte.
after his physician.

er sprach 'mit welhen sachen
he said 'with what things

wilt dû an mir gemachen
wilt thou on me bring-about

155 daz ich ein kint gewinne?
that I a child get?

nû kêre dîne sinne
now turn thy senses

dar an (des wirt dir michel nôt),
there to (of-that becomes to-thee great need),

oder dû muost kiesen den tôt.'
or thou must choose the death.'

des antwurt im der arzât
of-that answered to-him the physician

‘es wirt harte guot rât;
‘of-it becomes very good help;

ich verende al dîne bete:’
I fulfill all thy request:’

und gab im ein pulver daz ein krete
and gave to-him a powder so-that a toad

wuohs in sînem magen.
grew in his stomach.

dô begunde der künic tragen
then began the king to-bear

ein bürde harte swære,
a burden very heavy,

swie lîhte er ir âne wære.
however easily he of-it without were.

dô diu krete in dem man
when the toad in the man

grôze wahren began,
greatly to-grow began,

do gelichte er einem wîbe
then resembled he a woman

vornen an dem lîbe.
in-front on the body.

do gerou in alle stunde
then rued him every hour

daz ers ie begunde;
that he-it ever began;

er vorhte daz ungemach.
he feared the discomfort.

160

165

170

ze dem arzâte er dô sprach

to the physician he then spoke

175 daz er dem kinde werte

that he the child should-prevent

und in von der sühte nerte.

and him from the disease should-save.

dô tet er als im 〈kündic〉 was

then did he as to-him 〈known〉 was

und half im daz er genas

and helped him so-that he recovered

unde wol dâ von kan.

and well there from came.

180 Nêre was ein grôz man,

Nero was a big man,

mit michelme gebeine,

with great bones,

und sîn muoter kleine.

and his mother small.

dô wundert in alle zît

then wondered him all time

wâ in ir diu stat sô wît

where in her the place so wide

185 an deheinem ende wære

at any end were

dar ûz si in gebære:

there out-of she him brought-forth:

des wolt er niht erwinden,

of-that would he not desist,

er müeste ouch daz ervinden,

he must also that find-out,

und hiez sie zesnîden.

and bade her cut-open.

daz muoste si liden

that must she suffer

190

durch sîn böese gelüste.

for his evil desire.

er sach under die brüste

he looked under the breasts

und allen den lîp hin ze tal.

and all the body down to bottom.

ander wunder âne zal

other wonders without number

der künic manigez begienc.

the king many-a-one committed.

195

vernemet wie erz ane vienc

hear how he-it on took

daz er Rôme zerbrach.

that he Rome shattered.

man saget im waz dâ vor geschach

one told to-him what there before happened

ze Troie, dô man die gewan.

at Troy, when one it took.

do besante er alle sîne man,

then summoned he all his men,

200

den klaget er sîne swære:

to-them lamented he his grief:

‘mir habent Rômære

‘to-me have Romans

sô vil ze leide getân

so much for harm done

daz ich niht wol mac gelân,

that I not well can let-be,

ich schaffe daz si müezen

I bring-about that they must

205

mir mit schaden büezen.

to-me with harm atone.

swer hilfet rechen mîn leit,
whoever helps avenge my sorrow,

ich gibe im <die> sicherheit
I give to-him <the> assurance

daz ich in endelîche
that I him in-the-end

210 gewaltic unde rîche
mighty and rich

wil machen ê ich erwinde.
will make before I desist.

dô huop sîn gesinde
then raised his retinue

an die hêrren von der stat,
against the lords of the city,

alsô sie der künic bat,
as them the king asked,

215 einen strît grôzen.
a fight great.

dô hiez er ane stôzen
then bade he on thrust

daz fiur an manege strâzen.
the fire to many streets.

die grôzen ebenunmâzen
the great excesses

begienc er daz er gesæhe
committed he that he might-see

220 waz ze Troie geschæhe.
what at Troy happened.

Rôme wart wüeste durch nôt.
Rome became waste through distress.

die frumen lâgen alle tôt
the worthy lay all dead

die beidenthalben wâren,
who on-both-sides were,

daz niht in tûsent jâren

so-that not in a-thousand years

gewähset in ir lande

grows in their land

sô manec man âne schande

so many-a man without disgrace

als ez an den zîten was.

as it in the times was.

noch gesiht man manic palas

still sees one many-a palace

ze Rôme nimmer ganzen man.

at Rome never a-whole man.

225

Knighthood Comes to France, and the Knight of Craon

II

Knighthood left the burnt city poor as an orphan and came to France, where Charles subdued the lands and Oliver and Roland took it up, and the country folk after them; nowhere is it better rewarded. There, not long ago, a knight of Craon named Moriz served the countess of Beaumont, and tourneying and giving away were his whole life. The poet turns aside — loss is love's counselor, constancy is paid at last — then returns to Moriz, who chose one lady out of all and served her many a day.

- 230 sît ir stat alsô verbran,
since their city so burned,
 dô muoste Ritterschaft varn
then must Knighthood fare
 von Rôme, wan sie was arn
from Rome, for she was poor
 lîbes und des guotes
of-body and of-the goods
 und wart ir hôhen muotes
and was of-her high spirit
- 235 beroubet als ein weise
robbed as an orphan
 von der grôzen freise.
from the great terror.
 mit jâmerlîchen dingen
with piteous circumstances
 kam sie ze Kârlingen
came she to France
 und was dâ lange nôthaft,
and was there long in-distress,
- 240 biz aber Karle sider mit kraft
until however Charles afterward with force
 begunde twingen diu lant.
began to-subdue the lands.
 Olivier und Ruolant
Oliver and Roland
 die kuren si ze gesellen
them chose she as companions
 durch ⟨ir⟩ baldez ellen
for ⟨their⟩ bold valor
- 245 und phlâgen ir ritterlîche.
and tended her knightly.
 des wart ir lop vil rîche.
of-that became their praise very rich.

dô daz lantvolc gesach

when the country-folk saw

welch êre disen zwein geschach,

what honor to-these two happened,

dô tâten si ouch nâch in.

then did they also after them.

sus huop sich ir aller gewin.

thus raised itself of-them all gain.

ez stât dehein lant baz

there stands no land better

ze freuden dâ ie man gesaz

for joys where ever a-man dwelt

danne Kärlingen tuot.

than France does.

von diust ir ritterschaft guot:

from that-is their knighthood good:

si ist dâ wert und bekant

she is there prized and known

(sich hât sider manc ander lant

(itself has since many another land

gebezzert durch ir lêre

bettered through her teaching

an ritterschaft sêre):

in knighthood greatly):

si dienen harte schône

they serve very fairly

den frouwen dâ nâch lône,

the ladies there after reward,

wan man lônet baz in dâ

for one rewards better them there

danne niender anderswâ.

than anywhere elsewhere.

250

255

260

Dâ was ein ritter, deist niht lanc,

There was a knight, that-is not long,

der kêrte allen sînen gedanc

he turned all his thought

265 an einer frouwen minne

on a lady's love

und rieten im die sinne

and counseled to-him the senses

daz er diene zaller stunt

that he should-serve at-all hours

der grævinne von Beamunt,

the countess of Beaumont,

wan er deheine werder vant.

for he no worthier found.

270 Mauricius ist er genant,

Moriz is he named,

der lop nie von im geliez:

whom praise never from him departed:

Craun sîn hûs hiez.

Craon his house was-called.

der was dienstes bereit

he was for-service ready

vil manegen tac mit stætekeit:

very many-a day with constancy:

275 turnieren unde geben

to-tourney and to-give

was allez sîn leben,

was all his life,

âne lôn, vor allen dingen.

without reward, before all things.

swenne er ze Kärlingen

whenever he in France

turnieren in die marke kan,

to-tourney into the march came,

dô was dewederthalp nie man
then was on-neither-side ever a-man

280

des lîp ez baz tæte
whose person it better did

und des dicker prîs hæte.
and whose oftener praise had.

er was schæne und wol gezogen
he was fair and well bred

und aller dinge unbetrogen,
and in-all things unfeigned,

hövesch unde wîse.
courtly and wise.

285

von diu stuont er ze prîse
from that stood he in praise

und muose wol gevallen
and must well please

durch reht den liuten allen.
by right to-the people all.

Dô sîn dinc sô wol stuont,
When his affair so well stood,

dô tet er als dicke tuont
then did he as often do

290

werde liute wol gemuot,
worthy people well minded,

die minnent und nement verguot
they love and take for-good

swaz in dâ von widervert:
whatever to-them there from befalls:

daz ist aber danne ir wert.
that is however then their worth.

swer stætelîchen minnet,
whoever constantly loves,

295

wie vil der gewinnet

how much he gains

beide schaden und arebeit.

both harm and hardship.

hilft aber im sîn stætekeit

helps however him his constancy

daz er lônes wirt gewert,

that he of-reward is granted,

300 ob ers mit triuwen hât gegert,

if he-it with faithfulness has desired,

sô wirt es alles guot rât,

so becomes of-it all good help,

swaz er dâ vor erliten hât,

whatever he there before endured has,

daz ist im süeze unde guot,

that is to-him sweet and good,

wan im vil selten wê tuot

for to-him very seldom woe does

305 diu riuwe daz ers ie began,

the rue that he-it ever began,

wan er wirt lônes rîch ein man.

for he becomes of-reward rich a man.

Nû sprichet maneger hie bî,

Now says many-a-one here by,

swaz lebendes ûf der erde sî,

whatever living upon the earth be,

ez sî wilde oder zam,

it be wild or tame,

310 daz müeze sîn gehôrsam

that must be obedient

dem man und <sînem> liste:

to-the man and <to-his> skill:

des wânde ouch ich ê ich wiste
that thought also I before I knew

daz des niht wol wesen mac.
that of-that nothing well be can.

Minne twinget sunder slac
Love compels without blow

einen man noch baz an stæte
a man still better in constancy

denne ein keiser tæte.
than an emperor did.

als twanc ouch disen man ein wân,
so compelled also this man a hope,

daz er muoste tuon unde lân
that he must do and leave

swaz im diu Minne gebôt,
whatever to-him the Love commanded,

ez wære gemach oder nôt.
it were ease or distress.

Swer die Minne rehte erkennet,
Whoever the Love rightly knows,

der weiz wol daz si brennet
he knows well that she burns

daz herze in dem bluote.
the heart in the blood.

dem ist nôt der huote
to-him is need of-the guarding

wie er sich vor schaden beware.
how he himself from harm protect.

swaz im schaden widervare,
whatever to-him of-harm befall,

daz lâze er im sîn als ein hâr.
that let he to-him be as a hair.

315

320

325

ir sult wizzen daz für wâr

you shall know that for truth

daz man mac vil selten

that one can very seldom

330 mit sparen êre gelten:

with sparing honor pay:

wan des muote nieman der nû lebe

for of-that desired no-one who now lives

(Schade ist Minne râtgebe)

(Loss is Love's counselor)

daz er âne schaden minne,

that he without loss should-love,

ez ensîn vil guote sinne.

it unless-they-be very good senses.

335 swer sich an Minne wendet,

whoever himself to Love turns,

ob er sîn dinc verendet

if he his affair completes

daz ez im ergê ze heile,

that it to-him go to welfare,

der füere stæte veile,

let-him carry constancy for-sale,

biz er si dar zuo bringe

until he her there to bring

340 daz im von ir gelinge.

that to-him from her succeed.

Swer minnet unde sinne hât,

Whoever loves and senses has,

dem wil ich geben einen rât,

to-him will I give a counsel,

daz er unstæte fliehe

that he inconstancy flee

und sich an stæte ziehe:

and himself to constancy draw:

so beladet er sich vaste

so loads he himself firmly

mit einem süezen laste

with a sweet burden

und endet allez daz er wil.

and finishes all that he wills.

unstæte ist in der werlte vil:

inconstancy is in the world much:

swem diu beginnet lieben,

to-whom it begins to-please,

den gelîche ich den dieben;

him liken I to-the thieves;

als man den einen henket,

when one the one hangs,

der ander niht gedenket

the other not considers

daz er durch daz lâze

that he for that should-leave

sîn stelen oder mâze:

his stealing or should-moderate:

swie dicke ein unstæter siht

however often an inconstant-one sees

daz eim stæten wol geschiht,

that to-a constant-one well happens,

ez ist im als in daz mer ein slac,

it is to-him as into the sea a blow,

wan ez im niht lieber wesen mac.

for it to-him not dearer be can.

Ich möhte iu vil hin abe sagen:

I could to-you much away off say:

ich muoz ein ander dinc klagen.

I must an other thing lament.

345

350

355

360

ein fuore in der werlte vert

a fashion in the world fares

diu guoter minne vil verherht:

which of-good love much ravages:

daz ist ein schade ân êre.

that is a harm without honor.

nû bitet daz sie bekêre

now pray that them turn

365 dâ von unser heilant.

there from our Savior.

ich sage iu wie si sint genant:

I tell to-you how they are named:

Ûppic und Irre.

Wanton and Erring.

daz si got den guoten virre:

that them God from-the good remove:

wan sie verderbent sich dâ mite.

for they ruin themselves there with.

370 für die böesen ich nihtes bite:

for the wicked I nothing pray:

die tuon als ir reht sî.

they do as their right be.

swer in ist durch unstæte bî,

whoever to-them is through inconstancy by,

die heize ich wiht unreine.

them call I creatures unclean.

si sint aber noch baz gemeine

they are however still more common

375 und üppiger alle zît:

and more-wanton all time:

wan si nimet und er gât.

for she takes and he gives.

ich tæte ouch durch miete

I would-do also for hire

daz mir nieman geriete

what to-me no-one would-advise

solt ich dar umbe geben guot.

should I there for give goods.

daz selbe ouch ein wîp tuot.

the same also a woman does.

380

si machet nôtdurft balt.

it makes need bold.

sô ist ir laster zwivalt,

so is her reproach twofold,

der mit guote laster giltet:

who with goods reproach pays:

disen market maneger schiltet.

this market many-a-one reviles.

deist reht, wan ez ist missetât,

that-is right, for it is misdeed,

385

swer êre durch gelüste lât.

whoever honor for lust leaves.

Maneger man hât solhen site,

Many-a man has such custom,

ê er durch ein guot wîp lite

before he for a good woman should-suffer

eineger leie swære,

any kind-of grief,

daz er si alle verbære.

that he them all would-forgo.

390

der selbe ⟨man⟩ ist âne sin

the same ⟨man⟩ is without sense

und hât verlust für gewin.

and has loss for gain.

ich zalte ze gewinne

I would-count as gain

swenne ich vorderlicher minne

whenever I of-foremost love

395 von dienste oder êre durch mîn heil

from service or honor for my welfare

erwürbe rehte lônnes teil.

should-win rightly of-reward a-share.

Daz selbe spriche ich an mich.

The same say I of myself.

vil tugentliche kunde sich

very virtuously could himself

her Mauricius bewarn.

sir Moriz conduct.

400 durch daz muose im widervarn

for that must to-him befall

êre von guoten wîben:

honor from good women:

bî den wolt er belîben.

by them would he remain.

der bæsen lôn ist kleine.

the wicked-ones' reward is small.

er welte ûz allen eine

he chose out-of all one

405 und diente der vil manegen tac.

and served her very many-a day.

swer dienet und gedienen mac,

whoever serves and serve can,

der diene sô ez 〈ime〉 tuge

let-him serve so it 〈to-him〉 avail

und dâ man im gelônen muge.

and where one him reward may.

vil swache lônent bæsiu wîp:

very poorly reward wicked women:

si machent sêle unde lîp
they make soul and body

410

den mannen dicke unmære
to-the men often worthless

und maneger freuden lære.
and of-many joys empty.

diu guoten gebent hôhen muot;
the good give high spirit;

ir lôn ist êre umbe guot:
their reward is honor for good:

den sol ze rehte ein sælic man
them shall by right a blessed man

415

dienen, derz getuon kan.
serve, who-it do can.

His Complaint, and What the Countess Answers

III

Moriz waits for his reward until he despairs, and lies awake one night reckoning what all his service has bought him: threats, and a lady who will not take it for good. He comes to her and cannot get out a word, his color going from pale to red, until she asks what ails him and offers to send him to Salerno. He asks plainly for death or a certain hope, and she yields — she is his and he hers — if he will do one thing for her.

Her Mauricius der stæte,
Sir Moriz the constant,

swaz der gedienet hæte
whatever he served had

sîner frouwen zallen zîten,
to-his lady at-all times,

- 420 doch muoste er lōnes bīten
yet must he for-reward wait
 von ir unz an die stunde
from her until at the hour
 daz er zwîvels begunde.
that he of-doubt began.
 dô wart sîn freude kleine.
then became his joy small.
 er lac eins nahtes eine
he lay one night alone
- 425 und gedâhte an sîn arebeit.
and thought on his hardship.
 er sprach alsô: 'mir ist leit
he said thus: 'to-me is grievous
 daz ich ie wart geboren,
that I ever was born,
 sol ich gar haben verlorn
shall I wholly have lost
 mîn gedinge sô ich ie hâte.
my expectation as I ever had.
- 430 si lōnet mir ze spâte,
she rewards me too late,
 der ich vil gedienet hân,
whom I much served have,
 diu wil es niht verguot hân.
she will of-it not for-good take.
 des mac ich nimmer werden frô.
of-that can I never become glad.
 alsô sprach er aber dô:
so said he again then:
- 435 'ich bin des niht wol bedâht.
I am of-that not well advised.

dienest hât mîn lop brâht

service has my praise brought

von lande ze lande

from land to land

dâ man mich für guot erkande.

where one me for good knew.

sus lônnet mir diu frouwe mîn.

thus rewards me the lady my.

waz lône möhte bezzer sin?

what of-rewards might better be?

ouch muoste ich kumber liden:

also must I affliction suffer:

wie mohte ich daz vermîden?

how could I that avoid?

wan swer nâch êren wil streben,

for whoever after honor will strive,

er mac gemach ûf geben.

he may ease up give.

doch sol ein man gedenken,

yet shall a man consider,

ob er sorgen wil entwenken,

if he cares will escape,

swie kumberlîche ez umbe in stât,

however wretchedly it about him stands,

ez wirt noch alles guot rât.

it becomes yet of-all good help.

der gedanke ist vor swære

the thought is against grief

der beste schirmære. —

the best defender:—

ez schînet wol daz ich tump bin.

it shows well that I foolish am.

mîn zît gât hin âne sin.

my time goes away without sense.

440

445

450

got weiz wol daz nieman wart

God knows well that no-one was

sô sêre geharmschart

so sorely afflicted

455 als ich bin, und sage iu wie.

as I am, and say to-you how.

ich minte stætclîchen ie

I loved constantly ever

diu mich dâ wider vêhet.

her-who me there against hates.

ich hân ir vil geflêhet:

I have to-her much entreated:

sô vinde ich niht wan dreuwen.

so find I nothing except threats.

460 wie möhte ich mich erfreuwen,

how could I myself gladden,

sît ich die nôr vor mir weiz

since I the distress before me know

daz ich weder lôn noch geheiz

that I neither reward nor promise

nimmer vinde von ir

ever find from her

durch die ich alliu wîp verbir?

for whom I all women forgo?

465 ich diene unde wirbe

I serve and woo

biz ich gar verdirbe:

until I wholly perish:

daz ist ein kumberlîchiu nôr.

that is a wretched distress.

mir tæte baz ein senfter tôt

to-me would-do better a gentle death

dan ich sus gebunden müeze wesen.

than I thus bound must be.

si ist von der ich muoz genesen

she is from whom I must recover

470

oder lōnes siech beliben

or for-reward sick remain

âne sie von allen wîben.'

without her of all women.'

er dâhte sus an sîne klage:

he thought thus on his lament:

'waz hilfet daz ich immer trage

'what helps that I ever bear

sô ungefüegen kumber?

so monstrous an-affliction?

475

ich bin deste tumber.

I am the-more foolish.

swer sich aber Sorge hât gewenet,

whoever himself however of-care has accustomed,

ez gewirret niht ob er sich senet.

it troubles not if he himself pines.

daz selbe ist ouch mir geschehen.

the same is also to-me happened.

ich muoz von wârheite jehen

I must from truth say

480

daz mîn herze was ie umbe daz

that my heart was ever about that

sorgen ein wol gefüllet vaz

of-cares a well filled vessel

und mir leide nie gebrast.

and to-me of-sorrow never lacked.

freude was mir <ie> ein gast;

joy was to-me <ever> a stranger;

mîn herze ist freude noch maget,

my heart is of-joy still a-maiden,

485

wan daz mir dicke ist vor gesaget

except that to-me often is before told

waz die liute an freude brâhte.

what the people to joy brought.

swann ich dar an gedâhte,

whenever I there on thought,

sô hæte ich gerne alsam getân.

so would-have I gladly likewise done.

490 mîner sorge, der ich tûsent hân,

of-my cares, of-which I a-thousand have,

der macht ûz einer ie diz dinc

of-them makes out-of one ever this thing

ein beierischen schillinc.

a Bavarian shilling.

wie möhte ich mich der gar erwerben,

how could I myself of-them wholly defend,

mîn frouwe welle mich ernerren?

my lady unless-would me save?

495 ez ist ir missewende,

it is her fault,

gibt sie mir niht ein ende,

(if)-gives she to-me not an end,

sô wil ich aber ir geben

so will I however to-her give

umbe den tôt mîn leben.

for the death my life.

ouch wil ich ê versuochen

also will I first try

500 ob si welle geruochen

whether she would deign

daz ich immer werde erlôst.

that I ever be released.

getrôste mich ir süezer trôst,

should-comfort me her sweet comfort,

sô wære ich endelîche

so were I at-last

immer frô und rîche.

ever glad and rich.

nû muoz ich mich versehen

now must I myself expect

als mir ist ê geschehen,

as to-me is before happened,

gelebe ich immer den tac

live I ever the day

daz ich wider sie gesprechen mac,

that I toward her speak can,

daz mir mîn dienest giltet zins

that to-me my service pays interest

herten zorn als ein flins.

hard wrath as a flint.

des hât mîn gelücke

of-that has my good-fortune

wider sie müelîche tücke.

against her troublesome tricks.

ditz ist ein ungeloube

this is an unbelief

daz ich mich trôstes roube,

that I myself of-comfort rob,

und vil unwîser rât

and very unwise counsel

daz ich gelücke missetât

that I good-fortune misdeed

zîhe daz ich noch vor mir hân.

accuse-of what I yet before me have.

hæte heil baz ze mir getân,

had fortune better to me done,

505

510

515

sô hæte ez halbez mich vermiten
so would-have it half me spared

520 daz ich sus gar hân erliten.
what I thus wholly have endured.

si bedenket sich vil lîhte baz.
she bethinks herself very likely better.

owê, möhte ich wizzen daz,
alas, could I know that,

ê danne ir næme war!
before than of-her (I-)took heed!

ûf disen zwîvel kam er dar.
upon this doubt came he thither.

525 als schiere er si ane sach,
as soon-as he her upon looked,

vernemet wie im dô geschach.
hear how to-him then happened.

an sîner varwe vorhte
in his color fear

ûz bleiche rœte worhte
out-of pallor redness wrought

und vergienc aber diu gar.
and passed again it wholly.

530 harte misselîche var
very variously colored

wart er ê er funde
became he before he found

dehein wort er kunde
any word he could

gesprechen kleine oder grôz,
speak small or great,

daz es die frouwen verdrôz.
so-that of-it the lady wearied.

535 si sprach 'wie gehabet ir iuch sô?'
she said 'how bear you yourself so?'

‘frouwe, ich bin unf rô.’

‘lady, I am unhappy.’

‘war umbe? sult irz niht sagen?’

‘where fore? shall you-it not say?’

‘frouwe, ich muoz <ez> vertragen.’

‘lady, I must <it> bear.’

‘sprechet, waz ist iu getân?’

‘say, what is to-you done?’

‘frouwe, sol ich urloup hân?’

‘lady, shall I leave have?’

‘jâ: sprechet waz iu sî.’

‘yes: say what to-you be.’

‘frouwe, ich bin sælden frî.’

‘lady, I am of-fortune free.’

‘daz mac iu vil leit sîn.’

‘that may to-you very grievous be.’

‘ez ist ouch, frouwe künigîn.’

‘it is also, lady queen.’

‘gewirret iu aber iht mê?’

‘troubles you however anything more?’

‘jâ, frouwe: mir ist wê.’

‘yes, lady: to-me is woe.’

‘wâ?’ ‘allenthalben.’

‘where?’ ‘everywhere.’

‘sô sult ir iuch salben.’

‘so shall you yourself anoint.’

‘ich enmac noch enkan.’

‘I can-not nor know.’

‘nû sî ir doch ein starker man.’

‘now are you yet a strong man.’

‘frouwe, mîn kraft ist zergân.’

‘lady, my strength is gone.’

‘welt ir mînen rât hân?’

‘will you my counsel have?’

540

545

550

'jâ, frouwe, gerne.'

'yes, lady, gladly.'

'sô kêret ze Salerne:

'so turn to Salerno:

555 sol iuwer immer werden rât,

shall of-you ever become help,

dâ ist sô maneger arzât,

there is so many-a physician,

si nerent iuch, sult ir genesen:

they heal you, (if)-shall you recover:

des muget ir wol sicher wesen.'

of-that may you well certain be.'

'Frouwe, lât disen strît:

'Lady, leave this contention:

560 des ist mir nôt und an der zît.

of-that is to-me need and at the time.

ir wizzet <wol> daz ich bin

you know <well> that I am

von iuvern schulden âne sin,

by your fault without sense,

unde roubet mich dar nâch

and rob me there after

an mîner freude: deist ein schâch

of my joy: that-is a check

565 den ich vil dicke schouwe.

which I very often see.

mînes heiles frouwe,

of-my welfare lady,

genâdet mir (des ist mir nôt),

have-mercy on-me (of-that is to-me need),

oder ich muoz kiezen den tât.

or I must choose the death.

ich wil von iu ze lône hân

I will from you as reward have

den tôt oder gewissen wân.

the death or certain hope.

alsô bin ich her komen.

so am I hither come.

nû hæte ich gerne vernomen

now would-have I gladly heard

wie ich hinnen solte varn:

how I hence should fare:

ûz der mâzen rîch oder arn.'

out-of the measure rich or poor.'

Dô sprach diu frouwe wider in

Then said the lady toward him

'(doch) ich niht diu schuldige bin,

'(though) I not the guilty am,

sô wil ich mich schuldic geben.

so will I myself guilty give.

ir hât mir allez iuwer leben

you have to-me all your life

gedienet wol und alsô vil

served well and so much

daz ich ius gerne lônên wil.

that I to-you-of-it gladly reward will.

ê danne ich langer wære

before than I longer were

iuwers heiles kamerære,

of-your welfare chamberlain,

sô wizzet daz ich tæte

so know that I would-do

des ich immer schaden hæte.

of-which I ever harm had.

daz ist mîn wille manegen tac.

that is my will many-a day.

575

575

580

585

ich wil iu lônén als ich mac.

I will to-you reward as I can.

durch guoter miete liebe

for good hire's love

wirt stæter man ze diebe.

becomes a-constant man to a-thief.

alsô muoz ich immer mêre

so must I ever more

590 durch dienest ez wâgen sêre:

for service it risk greatly:

des mac dehein rât sîn.

of-that can no help be.

dû bist mîn unde ich dîn'

thou art mine and I thine'

sprach diu grævinne,

said the countess,

‘durch gesellicliche minne

‘for companionable love

595 sô tuo ein dinc durch mich:

so do one thing for me:

ich verdiene ez immer umbe dich.’

I earn it ever from thee.’

The Ship That Sailed on Dry Land

IV

Her one thing is a tournament before the castle, which she has never seen; she gives him her ring. He has a ship built on a wagon: decked and bored for three hundred spears, covered in scarlet samite, nailed in silver, with brass anchors and cables of silk, masted, shielded, and manned in his own colors, and horses harnessed between the planks so that nothing shows. His mariners sing and row it dry-shod through France to the field, where his tent is pitched with a mirror for its knob.

Er erbeite kûme wes si bat.

He awaited barely what she asked.

‘nim einen turnei für die stat,

‘take a tournament before the city,

daz ich den eine hie gesehe.

that I it alone here may-see.

nû füege deiz alsô geschehe:

now arrange that-it so happen:

600

wan ich gesach deheinen nie.

for I saw none ever.

wis ouch dû mân ritter hie:

be also thou my knight here:

ich wil dir lônén, ob ich kan.’

I will thee reward, if I can.’

dô wart er ein frô man.

then became he a glad man.

ein vingerlîn kleine

a ring small

605

mit einem guoten steine

with a good stone

zôchs ab der hant deiz nieman sach:

drew-she off the hand so-that-it no-one saw:

hern Mauricien sie ez stach

to-sir Moriz she it thrust

an sîn vinger einen.

on his finger one.

diu frouwe wolte meinen

the lady would signify

610

daz sie in zeichente mite

that she him marked with

nâch gesellîclîches wîbes site.

after a-companionable woman's custom.

urloup nam er zestunt.

leave took he at-once.

si kuste in an sînen munt

she kissed him on his mouth

615 und hiez in gote empholhen varn.

and bade him to-God commended fare.

ûf huop si ir sûbern arn,

up raised she her clean arms,

mit grôzer liebe in umbevie.

with great love him embraced.

von der freude an im zergie

from the joy in him passed-away

beide sorge und arebeit

both care and hardship

620 und swaz er ie durch sie erleit.

and whatever he ever for her endured.

Mîn her Mauricius von Craûn

My sir Moriz of Craon

gewan manigen garzûn,

got many-a squire,

die disen turnei schrîten

who this tournament proclaimed

in den landen wîten.

in the lands wide.

625 nû saget ich iu, kunde ich,

now would-tell I to-you, could I,

wie er bereite sich:

how he prepared himself:

er hiez ein schif machen

he bade a ship make

von wunderlîchen sachen,

of wondrous things,

daz solte gân âne were

which should go without hindrance

630 über velt als ûfem mere.

over field as on-the sea.

daz wart durch wunder getân.

that was for wonder done.

des schiffes meister muoste hân

the ship's master must have

vil grôz guot und wîsheit

very great goods and wisdom

⟨daz⟩ ez wurde bereit.

⟨that⟩ it became ready.

Vernemet in welher ahte

Hear in what manner

er daz schif mahte.

he the ship made.

(kunde ich iuz gesagen!)

(could I to-you-it tell!)

sîn gestelle daz was ein wagen,

its framework that was a wagon,

lîhte getræmet

lightly timbered

und als ein schif geschræmet

and as a ship slanted

daz ze Kölne solte fliezen.

which at Cologne should float.

bünen und beschiezen

to-deck and to-board

hiez ez der meister zehant.

bade it the master at-once.

alumbe an ietweder want

all-around on either side

dâ borte man dannoch

there bored one moreover

durch die büne manic loch:

through the deck many-a hole:

dâ solten sper inne stân,

there should spears within stand,

635

640

645

als daz schif enwec wolte gân.

when the ship away would go.

dô daz bereit was aldâ,

when that ready was there,

650 dô machte er zehant sâ

then made he at-once straightway

umb daz schif eine rame:

around the ship a frame:

diu was gestellet alsame

it was set-up likewise

mit grôzer unkûste,

with great artistry,

und doch ûf ein gerûste,

and yet upon a scaffold,

655 daz man ez ûf schîben

so-that one it on wheels

ab wege solte trîben.

off road should drive.

Ze Vlandern er hâte

To Flanders he had

nach rôtem scharlâte

for red scarlet

einen karrich gesant,

a cart sent,

660 dâ man die ûzeren want

there one the outer side

alsamîtîn mite bevie.

all-of-samite with covered.

der meister dar umbe gie

the master there around went

und sluoc ez an die spangen

and nailed it to the clasps

mit guoten nageln langen:

with good nails long:

die wâren alle silberwîz.

they were all silver-white.

665

er kêrte allen sînen vlîz

he turned all his diligence

an disen truckenen kiel,

on this dry keel,

daz ez den liuten wol geviel.

that it to-the people well pleased.

ze dem schiffe gehœret maneger nagel:

to the ship belongs many-a nail:

er hiez den grans und den zagel

he bade the prow and the stern

670

beslahen vil vaste

plate very firmly

und sante nâch <dem> maste.

and sent for <the> mast.

ûf huop er in zehant.

up raised he it at-once.

daz mêrre ruoder er ane bant:

the greater rudder he on bound:

daz was als daz schif getân.

it was as the ship fashioned.

675

er wolte gereitschefte hân

he would equipment have

ze sînem schiffe noch mê

for his ship still more

dann er wolte varn über sê.

than he would fare over sea.

daz was ein wunderlîch dinc.

that was a wondrous thing.

sîn anker wâren messinc,

his anchors were brass,

680

dar umbe seil von sîden.

there about ropes of silk.

daz möhte <er> wol vermîden:

that might <he> well forgo:

ez was ein üppiger schade;

it was a wanton loss;

ez stuont an trucknem gestade.

it stood on dry shore.

685 die ditz schif gesâhen

they-who this ship saw

verre unde nâhen,

far and near,

die sprâchen 'waz sol daz sîn?

they said 'what shall that be?

hie enist diu Mase noch der Rîn:

here is-not the Meuse nor the Rhine:

mit wie getânen dingen

with what fashioned means

690 wil erz von hinnen bringen?

will he-it from here bring?

ez ist gar ein verloren guot.

it is wholly a lost good.

ern fürhte iht die sinfluot

unless-he fear at-all the flood

und welle dar inne genesen,

and would there within survive,

waz mac ez anders wesen?'

what can it otherwise be?'

695 hin abe wart ditz mære

far off became this tale

wît und offenbære.

wide and manifest.

Ez nâhete sîner var.

It neared his journey.

dô daz schif bereit wart,

when the ship ready became,

dô was ez allez samt gar
then was it all together wholly

nâch sînem wâfen gevar:
after his arms colored:

marnære unde stiure,
mariners and steersmen,

nâch sîner govertiure
after his caparison

wâren si alle gekleit,
were they all clothed,

wan si ein man sneit.
for them one man cut.

nû hiez ers ûf daz schif tragen
now bade he-them onto the ship carry

(kunde ichz iu rehte sagen!)
(could I-it to-you rightly tell!)

aller êrste diu ruoder
of-all first the oars

und dar nâch sper ein fuoder.
and there after spears a wagon-load.

der wâren driu hundert
of-them were three hundred

von den andern gesundert,
from the others separated,

daz der keinez enbrast,
that of-them none was-lacking,

geverwet alsô der mast,
colored as the mast,

an der man iegelîchez bant
to which one each bound

ein baniere zehant,
a banner at-once,

daz was genuoc rîche,
that was quite rich,

700

705

710

715

dem segele gelîche,

to-the sail alike,

daz hiez er ûf stecken

that bade he up set

und ziegelîchem strecken.

and to-each stretch.

diu wâren ouch alliu blanc.

they were also all white.

720 ditz was ein wunderlîch gedanc

this was a wondrous thought

daz er si wolte durch ruon

that he them would for fame

eines tages gar vertuon.

in-one day wholly spend.

Er brâht dar in mit liste,

He brought there in with cunning,

daz ez lützel liute wiste,

so-that it few people knew,

725 ros diu ez ziehen solten

horses which it draw should

swan si varn wolten.

whenever they fare would.

zwischen tuoehen und den diln

between cloths and the planks

dâ rihte man siln

there arranged one traces

unde spien diu ros dar in.

and harnessed the horses there in.

730 daz was ein kundiger sin

that was a cunning device

daz dâ ûze nieman gesach

that there outside no-one saw

daz dâ inne geschach:

what there within happened:

si machtenz alsô tougen,

they made-it so secret,

der ez sæhe mit den ougen,

who it should-see with the eyes,

der swüere wol ez wære ein troum.

he would-swear well it were a dream.

735

mitten an dem maspoum

midway on the mast-tree

hienc man sînen schilt an:

hung one his shield on:

als ein lampartischer van

as a Lombard banner

schein sîn segel in daz lant

shone his sail into the land

dâ man in an den mast bant.

where one it to the mast bound.

740

Als er in daz schif kan,

When he into the ship came,

dô hiez er den schifman

then bade he the shipman

alzoges die strâzen

altogether the roads

durch guot geverte lâzen

for good going leave

und varn durch die wîte

and fare through the open

745

über velt ze aller zîte.

over field at all times.

dô folgten im die liute

then followed him the people

rehte als einer briute

just as a bride

und sâhen waz dâ wære.

and saw what there were.

- 750 **sîne marnære**
his mariners
die sungen unde ruoten.
they sang and rowed.
vergebene sie sich muoten,
in-vain they themselves exerted,
wan ez durch ir rüejē nie
for it through their rowing never
deste belder engie.
the-more quickly went.
- 755 **Alsô ritterliche**
So knightly
fuor er durch Frankrîche
fared he through France
gegen dem turneies zile.
toward the tournament's goal.
dô kâmen liute harte vile,
then came people very many,
ritter unde frouwen,
knights and ladies,
- 760 **die daz schif wolten schouwen,**
who the ship would behold,
beide grâwen unde kint.
both gray-ones and children.
in treip ein rehter segelwint
him drove a true sailing-wind
gegen der burc an daz velt.
toward the castle onto the field.
dâ sluoc man ûf ein gezelt;
there pitched one up a tent;
- 765 **an einer wise was sîn habe.**
at a meadow was his harbor.

zehant gienc er hin abe

at-once went he down off

über einen brunnen der dâ spranc.

over a spring which there welled.

dar nâch was enborlanc,

there after was not-very-long,

dô kâmen sie mit schalle

then came they with clamor

ûz der stat alle

out-of the city all

und sâhen den schifman

and looked the shipman

als ein wildez tier an.

as a wild beast at.

Sîn gezelt was harte guot.

His tent was very good.

an die winden ûf den huot

on the tent-cloths up-to the cap

wâren sîniu wâpen gesniten:

were his arms cut:

daz hæte er nôte vermiten.

that would-have he hardly forgone.

er mohte ez mit êren füeren.

he could it with honor carry.

mit harte guoten snüeren

with very good cords

was ez geslagen ûf daz gras.

was it pitched upon the grass.

ein spiegel der knopf was.

a mirror the knob was.

under daz gezelt wârñ geleit

under the tent were laid

golter lanc unde breit,

coverlets long and broad,

770

775

780

harte wol gemâle

very well painted

von golde in zendâle.

of gold on sendal.

785 dar ûf sâzen die geste.

there upon sat the guests.

harte unmâzen veste

very beyond-measure firm

wâren nagele und die spangen.

were nails and the clasps.

die wurden wol enphangen

they were well received

die geruochten des sînes.

who deigned of-(what-was) his.

790 dâ stuont ein kopf vol wînes,

there stood a cup full of-wine,

lûter sam wær ez ein wazzer,

clear as-if were it a water,

und swebete dar inne nazzet,

and floated there within a-dipper,

daz iegelîcher selbe tranc,

that each himself drank,

swen der durst dar zuo twanc.

whomever the thirst there to compelled.

The Tournament Before the Castle

V

He bears mass on the ship, arms piece by piece, and sails at the castle wall with tabors, flutes, and trumpets, as though he led galleys out to sea. From a window the countess wonders whether it is Saint Brendan or Antichrist. The count rides out, kills a knight at the first charge, weeps that knighthood has made him guilty, and withdraws; Moriz begs them not to let his ship stand idle, they commend the dead man to Saint Michael, and he arms again and rides from a door in the fore-deck to open the tournament.

Dâ enwas nieman,

There was no-one,

swaz spilmanne dar kan,

whatever of-minstrels thither came,

der sie sô wol beriete,

who them so well provided,

wan dâ was varnder diete

for there was of-wandering folk

in dem gezelte und dâ vore,

in the tent and there before,

si trüegen wol ein hûs enbore.

they would-bear well a house aloft.

als des tages schîn dô verswant,

when the day's light then vanished,

dô wart manic licht gebrant,

then was many-a light burned,

grôz unde gewunden,

great and twisted,

daz siz ûf der burc niht kunden

so-that they-it on the castle not could

erkennen wan für ein fiuwer,

recognize except for a fire,

795

800

805

wie dâ brunne ein schiuwer.

as-if there burned a barn.

sîn herberge diu stuont schône:

his lodging it stood fairly:

ob er von rehte eine krône

if he by right a crown

trüege dâ ze lande,

wore there in country,

810 ez wære ir âne schande.

it were to-it without disgrace.

Des morgens dô der tac erschein

Of-the morning when the day appeared

die ritter wurden des enein

the knights became of-that agreed

daz si zuo dem schiffe kæmen

that they to the ship should-come

und die messe vernæmen:

and the mass should-hear:

815 daz tâten si alle samet dô.

that did they all together then.

des wart der schifman sô frô

of-that became the shipman so glad

daz ern wiste waz er solte tuon.

that he-not knew what he should do.

man briet zwein und zwein ein huon:

one roasted for-two and for-two a hen:

diu âzen sie dô man gesanc:

them ate they when one had-sung:

820 dar zuo iegelîcher tranc

there to each drank

daz ers genuoc hâte.

that he-of-it enough had.

dô fuoren si drâte

then fared they quickly

aller mannegelich

of-all every-man

unde wâpenten sich.

and armed themselves.

Alsô dem von Craûn

When to-the of Craon

825

wart diu muoze und der rûn,

became the leisure and the room,

dô zôch er aller êrest an

then drew he of-all first on

ein wambes 〈von〉 buggeran.

a doublet 〈of〉 buckram.

dô hiez er im reichen

then bade he to-him reach

einen vilz weichen

a felt soft

830

und bant in für sîniu knie.

and bound it before his knees.

alsô bewarete er sich ie.

so protected he himself ever.

zwô hosen wîz 〈ûz〉 îsen

two hose white 〈of〉 iron

hiez er im ane brîsen,

bade he to-him on lace,

veste, niht swære,

firm, not heavy,

835

wan er gerne lîhte wære:

for he gladly light were:

er fuor in schricken als ein tier.

he went in leaps as a beast.

ein harte guoten lendenier

a very good loin-guard

den bant er umbe die huf

it bound he about the hip

840 und nestelte die hosen dar uf.

and laced the hose there on.

einen huot truoc man im dar:

a coif carried one to-him thither:

der bevienc im die stirne gar,

it covered for-him the brow wholly,

daz im nie kein êr dar unde

so-that to-him never any metal there under

die hût verritzen kunde.

the skin scratch could.

845 dannoch zôch er ane mê

moreover drew he on more

einen halsberc wîz als der snê.

a hauberk white as the snow.

er hiez die riemen stricken

he bade the straps knot

vil vaste mit ricken.

very fast with bands.

Alsô ditz was getân,

When this was done,

850 dô gienc er ûf daz schif stân,

then went he onto the ship to-stand,

und mit im die er wolte.

and with him those he wanted.

ein kneht sîn ros holte:

a servant his horse fetched:

verdaht brâhte erz zuo der türe

covered brought he-it to the door

(er hiez diu andern her füre

(he bade the others hither forth

ûf einen bühel leiten

onto a bill lead

und bat si sîn dâ beiten):

and asked them of-him there wait):

daz was schœne unde starc,

it was fair and strong,

in daz schif erz verbarc.

into the ship he-it hid.

Dô fuor er mit êren

Then fared he with honor

und hiez den segel kêren

and bade the sail turn

hin gegen der burcmûren.

away toward the castle-wall.

si sluogen ir tabûren

they beat their tabors

und bliesen floiten unde horn.

and blew flutes and horn.

ez wart nie manne sô zorn,

there was never to-a-man so wrathful,

der dise freude hôrte,

who this joy heard,

sîn ungemüete ez stôrte.

his ill-humor it dispelled.

si bliesen busûnen grôz,

they blew trumpets great,

manic stimme dar ûz dôz,

many-a voice there out sounded,

pfîfen unde rotten,

pipes and rotes,

855

860

865

- 870 als ⟨er⟩ galiotten
as-if ⟨he⟩ galliots
 fuorte mit sînem here
led with his host
 und rouben wolte ûf ⟨dem⟩ mere.
and rob would upon ⟨the⟩ sea.
 Der burc an einem orte,
Of-the castle at one corner,
 nâhen bî der porte,
near by the gate,
- 875 dâ stuont ein hûs gevieret,
there stood a house four-square,
 schône gezieret
fairly adorned
 mit mermelsteine harte wol.
with marble very well.
 diu venster sâzen frouwen vol:
the windows sat of-ladies full:
 enmitten dar inne
in-the-midst there within
- 880 saz diu grævinne,
sat the countess,
 diu ez allez hâte gefrumet.
who it all had brought-about.
 si sprach 'weist enez daz dort kumet?
she said 'knowest that-one that yonder comes?
 ez ist harte wol getân.
it is very well made.
 ich wæne sant Brandân
I think saint Brendan
- 885 durch wunder her gevarn ist.
for wonder hitber fared is.
 sî ez aber der Entecrist,
be it however the Antichrist,

sô seht daz ieman verzage:

so see lest anyone despair:

ez nâhet dem suontage.

it nears the judgment-day.

fliecht sîne predegen umbe daz

flee his preachings for that

wir suln an got gelouben baz.'

we shall in God believe better'

890

Neben daz hûs für den berc

Beside the house before the hill

hiez er füeren sîn werç,

bade he lead his contrivance,

sînen anker schôz er an den sant:

his anchor threw he onto the sand:

dâ mite behabete er daz lant.

there with held he the land.

waz hilfet daz ichz lenge?

what helps that I-it lengthen?

895

umb in wart solch gedrenge

about him became such a-throng

daz im dâ wart vil kûme

that to-him there became very hardly

des veldes zeinem rûme.

of-the field for-a space.

dô daz die ritter vernâmen,

when that the knights heard,

ze velde si kâmen

to field they came

900

beidenthalben glîche.

on-both-sides alike.

der puneiz wart rîche.

the charge became rich.

zehant dô man es began,

at-once when one it began,

der grâve von der burc kan:

the count from the castle came:

905 für wâr ez sîn wîp sach:

for truth it his woman saw:

einen ritter er dô ze tôde stach.

a knight he then to death thrust.

Des wurden si beide

Of-that became they both

trûric vor leide.

sad for sorrow.

der grâve ez wol bescheinde,

the count it well showed,

910 wan er vil sêre weinde

for he very sorely wept

daz er ie durch ritterschaft

that he ever through knighthood

solte werden schulhaft.

should become guilty.

zehant entwâfent er sich dô.

at-once disarmed he himself then.

des wurden si alle unfrô

of-that became they all unhappy

915 durch daz jâmerlîche leit.

for the piteous sorrow.

der grâve ûf die burc reit

the count up-to the castle rode

einer trûrigen vart.

of-a sorrowful journey.

daz dâ sünde getân wart

that there sin done was

daz geschuof der schifman

that brought-about the shipman

920 der über lant dar kan.

who over land thither came.

der bat vil flîzicliche sie,

he asked very earnestly them,

er sprach 'gestât mîn schif hie,

he said 'should-stand my ship here,

sô sitze ich ouch dâ bî.

so sit I also there by.

seht waz êre iu daz sî;

see what honor to-you that be;

ir hât des laster immer mê,

you have of-it reproach ever more,

solt ich ertrinken âne sê.'

should I drown without sea.'

Dô sprâchen si albesunder,

Then said they each-apart,

ez wære ein michel wunder

it were a great wonder

daz diser turnei verdürbe

that this tournament should-perish

ob ein man stürbe:

if one man died:

'wir sulen sîne sêle

'we shall his soul

sante Michaële

to-saint Michael

bevelhen, unde stechen wir.'

commend, and joust we.'

die rieten nâch sîner gir.

they counseled after his desire.

925

930

- 935 Ein schal wart über gevilde,
 A clamor arose over field,
- helme unde schilde
helms and shields
- wart dô vil erschellet
was then much shattered
- und maniger gevellet.
and many-a-one felled.
- als er in dem schiffe sach
when he in the ship saw
- 940 daz hie ûze sluoc und stach
 that here outside struck and thrust
- an dem velde maneger ritter snel,
on the field many-a knight swift,
- dô zôch er an sîn wambasel:
then drew he on his little-doublet:
- verre man ez schînen sach.
far one it shining saw.
- ime wart daz ûzer dach
for-him became the outer cover
- 945 ein harte guoter samît,
 a very good samite,
- wol gesniten unde wît.
well cut and wide.
- sîniu wâpen dar an wîste
his arms there on showed
- diu aller beste lîste
the of-all best skill
- dâ von ir ie hôrtet sagen:
there of you ever heard tell:
- 950 diu wâren ze vlîze drin getragen.
 they were with care therein worked.

Ûf bant er den helm sînen

On bound he the helm his

(den sach man verre schînen),

(it saw one far shining),

vil wol gewieret,

very well inlaid,

mit golde wol gezieret,

with gold well adorned,

als im wol tohte.

as to-him well befitted.

nieman gemerken mohte

no-one perceive could

an allem sîme gelæze

in all his bearing

wan als ein künic sæze.

except as a king sat.

sîn ros brâhte man im dar,

his horse brought one to-him thither,

rehte als ein <swan> gevar,

just as a <swan> colored,

verdecket mit zendâte.

covered with sendal.

ân daz eine er hâte

besides that one he had

ûzerhalben ehte,

outside eigh,

alsam verdecket rehte.

likewise covered exactly.

die sîne bat er alle

the his asked he all

zuo dem græsten schalle

at the greatest clamor

daz schif balde rihten.

the ship quickly make-ready.

955

960

965

vorne bî der phlihten

in-front by the fore-deck

was ein türe ûz gesniten:

was a door out cut:

970 dâ kam schône vür geriten

there came fairly forth riding

nieman wan er eine.

no-one except he alone.

sîn geselleschaft was kleine

his company was small

swanne er über lant vlôz:

whenever he over land floated:

si wart aber sît grôz.

it became however afterward great.

975 sîner knehte kâmen 〈vil〉 gerant:

of-his servants came 〈many〉 galloping:

der iegelîch nam in die hant

of-them each took into the hand

ein sper oder zwei.

one spear or two.

dô huop sich ein turnei.

then raised itself a tournament.

He Gives Away Everything, and Is Sent For

VI

Moriz unhorses ten men one after another, gives away every horse that begins to sweat, and has it cried that whoever wants goods should come to the ship. When his colored spears are spent his lady kisses him. Then he gives away the ship itself, and the squires tear it into ells and cloth; then his hauberk to a captive, and he is unlacing his hose when a messenger fetches him to an orchard, where a maiden leads him into a chamber painted like a minster, to an ivory bed of leopard hides, Greek silk, and sable.

Er nam den schilt, wan im was gâch,
He took the shield, for to-him was urgent,

unde ein sper dar nâch.
and a spear there after.

980

sîn ros nam er mit den sporn.
his horse took he with the spurs.

dô machte er freude âne zorn.
then made he joy without wrath.

⟨jâ⟩ kam er rehte als ein ar
⟨indeed⟩ came he just as an eagle

under kleiner vogeleschar.
among small birds' flock.

einen stach er dar nider,
one thrust he there down,

985

und aber den anderen sider,
and again the other after,

fûrbaz den dritten,
further the third,

und den vierden dâ enmitten,
and the fourth there in-the-midst,

den fünften stach er sêre,
the fifth thrust he sorely,

den sehsten michel mêre,
the sixth much more,

990

den sibenden er dar nâch stach,
the seventh he there after thrust,

dem ahten alsame geschach,
to-the eighth likewise happened,

verre under den friunden
far among the friends

stach er nider den niunden,
thrust he down the ninth,

den zehenden stach er ûf daz gras:
the tenth thrust he onto the grass:

995

ez viel swaz vor ime was.

there fell whatever before him was.

mit sus getânem dinge

with such fashioned thing

macht er daz ime ringe

made he that to-him easy

diu ros liefen lære

the horses ran empty

1000 als ez ein stuot wære.

as-if it a stud were.

als im ein ros von hitzen

when to-him a horse from heat

inder begunde switzen,

anywhere began to-sweat,

sô gap er ez fûrbaz,

so gave he it further,

ûf ein anderz er gesaz.

upon an other he sat.

1005 als im aber ein anderz kam,

when to-him again an other came,

sô was er dâ der ditze nam.

so was he there who this took.

hie mite der schifherre geschuof

here with the ship-lord brought-about

daz er hâte gar den ruof

that he had wholly the acclaim

ze rehte und durch miete

by right and through hire

1010 von aller der diete.

from all the folk.

Als er durch der frouwen bete

When he for the lady's asking

sîniu geverweten sper vertete

his colored spears spent

allez ze rehter juste

all in proper joust

(dô in sîn frouwe kuste),

(then him his lady kissed),

dô gienc ez an die planken.

then went it to the planks.

si mohte ims wol danken

she might to-him-it well thank

daz nie dehein man

that never any man

sô grôzen prîs gewan

so great renown won

als er zuo den zîten

as he at the times

hæte von beiden sîten.

had from both sides.

Wær er betalle ein heiden,

Were he wholly a heathen,

von der kristenheit gescheiden,

from the Christendom parted,

der in des tages sæhe,

who him of-the day saw,

durch reht er im êren jæhe.

by right he to-him honor would-own.

er fuor umbe als ein bal

he fared about as a ball

und hiez rüefen über al,

and bade cry over all,

swer guotes geruochte,

whoever of-goods desired,

1015

1020

1025

daz erz zem schiffe suochte.

that he-it at-the ship should-seek.

dâ gap er in allen tac

there gave he to-them all day

1030 swaz im ze râme gelac,

whatever to-him to hand lay,

swaz er dar brâhte.

whatever he thither brought.

als nû der âbent nâhte,

when now the evening neared,

dô was er müede entwichen

then had he weary withdrawn

von slegen und ouch von stichen

from blows and also from thrusts

1035 ze dem schiffe durch sîn gemach.

to the ship for his ease.

swer in durch guot ane sprach,

whoever him for goods on spoke,

den kunde er wol gestillen

him could he well satisfy

mit guote und ouch mit willen.

with goods and also with will.

des wart sîn lop vil breit.

of-that became his praise very wide.

1040 daz schif daz er dô reit

the ship that he then rode

hiez er die garzûne nemen:

bade he the squires take:

wem möhte ez baz iu gezemen?

to-whom might it better to-you befit?

Ane griffen sie ez gar.

On seized they it wholly.

ir kâmen ouch vil dar,

of-them came also many thither,

daz si nieman kunde gezelen.

that them no-one could count.

1045

dô wurden einem zwô elen,

then became to-one two ells,

sô wurden dem andern drî,

so became to-the other three,

und dem vierden dâ bî

and to-the fourth there by

ze einem rocke genuoc.

for a coat enough.

der fünfte den sehsten sluoc,

the fifth the sixth struck,

1050

daz im daz houbet zerbrast.

so-that to-him the head burst.

der sibende begreif den mast,

the seventh seized the mast,

der ahte daz ruoder.

the eighth the rudder.

dem niunden wart ein muoder,

to-the ninth became a bodice,

dem zehenden zeinem gêren.

to-the tenth for-a gore.

1055

mit sus getânen êren

with such fashioned honors

wart ez geteilet under sie.

was it divided among them.

ir erfreischtet dâ vor nie

you learned there before never

dehein schif sô mære

of-any ship so famous

daz âne wazzer wære.

that without water were.

1060

Do der turnei was zergangen,
When the tournament was ended,

dô kam ein man gevangen,
then came a man captured,

der bat in sêre der habe.
he begged him sorely of-the goods.

sînen halsberc zôch er abe
his hauberk drew he off

1065 und gap im den ze stiure:
and gave to-him it as help:

des gnâdet er im tiure.
of-that thanked he to-him dearly.

als er sich des erbarte,
when he himself of-that stripped,

dô zôch er ane harte
then drew he on quickly

sîn wambes für die kelte.
his doublet against the cold.

1070 vil unlang er entwelte,
very not-long he lingered,

er frâgte ob ieman kâme
he asked whether anyone came

der ouch die hosen nâme:
who also the hose would-take:

dannoch was dâ niemen.
still-then was there no-one.

do enstrikte er die riemen
then unlaced he the straps

1075 an dem einen beine.
on the one leg.

si liezen <in> alters eine
they left <him> utterly alone

die mit im wâren dar komen:
those with him were thither come:

si hâten wol von im vernomen

they had well from him heard

daz si gâben, swer sis bâte,

that they should-give, whoever them-of-it asked,

swaz iegelîcher hâte:

whatever each had:

von diu nâmens sîn deheine war.

from that took-they of-him no heed.

under diu kam ein bote dar:

amid that came a messenger thither:

er sprach, do er in sus eine vant,

he said, when he him thus alone found,

‘mîn frouwe hât nâch iu gesant.

‘my lady has after you sent.

nû vart ab wege, ez ist zît.

now fare off road, it is time.

rehte als ir hie sît

just as you here are

sô sult ir dar zuo ir:

so shall you there to her:

daz enbôt si iu bî mir.’

that sent she to-you by me.’

frôlîchen tet er daz:

gladly did he that:

ûf des knehtes phârt er saz

upon the servant’s palfrey he sat

und fuor als in der kneht hiez.

and fared as him the servant bade.

nu vernemet wie in der kneht liez

now hear how him the servant left

in einem boumgarten:

in a tree-garden:

1080

1085

1090

dâ hiez sie sîn warten

there bade she of-him wait

1095 ein juncfrouwen wol getân;

a young-lady well made;

diu bat in mit ir gân

she asked him with her go

in eine kemenâte

into a chamber

die si tougenlîche hâte

which she secretly had

zuo ir heimlicheit erwelt.

for her privacy chosen.

1100 dar fuort diu juncfrouwe den helt.

thither led the young-lady the hero.

an iegelîchem ende

at every end

wâren gemâl die wende

were painted the walls

wol und ouch sô vaste

well and also so strongly

daz ez als ein münster glaste.

that it as a minster gleamed.

1105 oben sô gemuonet was

above so mosaicked was

daz ez lûhte als ein spiegelglas.

that it shone as a mirror-glass.

Dar giengen sie zwei eine.

Thither went they two alone.

von edelem gesteine

of noble gems

wâren venster drin gemaht.

were windows therein made.

- beide tac unde naht 1110
both day and night
- stuont ein bette dâ bî:
stood a bed there by:
- vernemet wie daz gemachet sî.
hear how that made be.
- dem wâren die stollen
of-it were the posts
- grôz unde gewollen,
great and rounded,
- von helfenbeine, und ergraben 1115
of ivory, and carved
- wâren tier an erhaben,
were beasts on raised,
- aller hande als sie diu erde treit,
of-every kind as them the earth bears,
- und golt dar under geleit
and gold there under laid
- enmitten in daz helfenbein:
in-the-midst into the ivory:
- daz antlütze dar ûz schein. 1120
the face there out shone.
- die rigel wâren alsus,
the rails were thus,
- holz von Vulcanus,
wood of Vulcan,
- daz niht verbrinnen enkan:
which not burn can:
- und was gestrecket dar an
and was stretched there on
- vier liebarten hiute 1125
four leopards' hides
- (ditz machent rîche liute),
(this make rich people),

enmitten zesamene gezogen.

in-the-midst together drawn.

diu rede ist wâr und niht gelogen,

the account is true and not lied,

swie ich ⟨ez⟩ niht beziugen mac.

however I ⟨it⟩ not attest can.

1130 enmitten ûf den hiuten lac

in-the-midst upon the hides lay

bette weich unde grôz.

beds soft and great.

diu wâren niht gar blôz:

they were not wholly bare:

in wâren die ziechen

of-them were the bed-ticks

pfellelîn von Kriechen:

of-silk from Greece:

1135 dar obe lac ein golter dâ,

there above lay a coverlet there,

ich wæne, frou Cassandrâ

I think, lady Cassandra

ie bezzer werc gemehte

never better work made

oder dehein ir geslehte;

or any of-her kindred;

und des selben ein declachen.

and of-the same a bed-spread.

1140 dâ hiezen si under machen

there bade they under make

ein veder die man tiure galt.

a fur which one dearly paid.

ein lîste was dâ vor gestalt

a border was there before set

von zobeles swarz als ein kol,

of sable black as a coal,

einer spanne breit alumbes vol.

a span broad all-around full.

Die vedere wâren guot genuoc.

The furs were good enough.

1145

daz tier daz die belges truoc

the beast that the pelts bore

daz ist alfurt genant.

it is alfurt named.

der künec von Maroch hât ein lant,

the king of Morocco has a land,

daz liget verre ime sê;

whiche lies far in-the sea;

dâ vâhet manz und ninder mê:

there catches one-it and nowhere more:

1150

daz ist geheizen Kartago

it is called Carthage

und bewarete ez frou Dido.

and guarded it lady Dido.

dâ diu houbet wâren hin gekêret

where the heads were thither turned

dâ was ie hôher gemêret

there was ever higher heightened

mit einem phulwen sîdîn.

with a pillow silken.

1155

daz bette mohte wol bezzer sîn —

the bed might well better be—

sô kan aber ich niht gesagen baz,

so can however I not tell better,

wan lât ez sîn alse daz

but let it be as that

an sîner güete gelîch

in its goodness alike

1160 daz von Veldecke meister Heinrîch

which of Veldeke master Heinrich

machte harte schône

made very fair

dem kûnege Salomône,

for-the king Solomon,

dâ er ûf lac unde slief,

where he upon lay and slept,

darinne 〈in〉 Venus ane rief,

wherein 〈him〉 Venus upon called,

1165 biz daz si in erwakte:

until that she him awakened:

mit ir bogen si in erschrakete,

with her bow she him startled,

si schôz in an sîn herze

she shot him in his heart

daz in der selbe smerze

so-that him the same pain

drukete unz an sîn ende:

pressed until at his end:

1170 er muose in ir gebende,

he must in her bonds,

swie wîs sô er wære,

however wise so he were,

si machte in witze lære.

she made him of-wits empty.

He Falls Asleep in the Maiden's Lap

VII

He talks with the maiden and wishes her lady in the room; she tells him the count has wept all day over the knight he killed and curses the ship. Weary, Moriz lays his head in her lap on her promise to keep watch, and sleeps. The countess comes late, will not have him waked, calls him a dead sheep who liked sleep better than her, and, though the maiden pleads for all women, argues herself out of the reward: men are inconstant, and three or four would know of her wedding by morning, and thirty soon after.

Disem man was lützel baz

To-this man was little better

der bî der juncfrouwen saz,

who by the young-lady sat,

heimlich und doch fremede.

intimate and yet strange.

1175

gras unde semedede

grass and rushes

was gestreuwet ûf den esterich.

was strewn upon the floor.

dô banekten si mit rede sich,

then diverted they with talk themselves,

si frâgte in etewenne

she asked him sometimes

und aber er si denne

and again he her then

von aller slahte dingen,

of every kind-of things,

diu zwei sunderlingen.

the two apart.

er sprach 'sicherliche,

he said 'certainly,

1180

ditze hûs ist rîche,

this house is rich,

1185 schœne unde wunneclîch:

fair and delightful:

zewâre, des dunket mich

truly, of-that seems to-me

an allen mînen sinnen,

in all my senses,

wære mîn frouwe hinnen,

were my lady here-within,

sô wære ez als ich wolte,

so were it as I would,

1190 ob ichz erwûnschen solte.

if I-it wish should.

ez möhte aber ûf der erden

there might however upon the earth

kein hûs sô bæsez werden,

no house so wretched become,

sæh ich si ein mâl dar in gân,

should-see I her one time there in go,

ez dûhte mich baz dan ditz getân.'

it would-seem to-me better than this made.'

1195 Dô sprach diu juncfrouwe

Then said the young-lady

'swie übele ir, hêrre, zouwe,

'however ill to-her, lord, fare,

si kumet als si komen mac.

she comes as she come can.

mîn herre lît hiut allen tac

my lord lies today all day

und weinet harte sêre.

and weeps very sorely.

er wil nimmer mêre 1200
he will never more

frô werden noch geil,
glad become nor merry,

sît im daz grôze unheil
since to-him the great misfortune

von iuvern schulden geschach
by your fault happened

daz er einen ritter ze tôde stach.
that he a knight to death thrust.

des klaget er sêre iuwer vart, 1205
of-that laments he sorely your journey,

daz si ie ûf geleget wart,
that it ever up laid was,

und fluochet zaller stunde
and curses at-all hours

daz man ie begunde
that one ever began

daz selbe schif machen:
the same ship to-make:

sô muoz mân frouwe lachen 1210
so must my lady laugh

daz iuwer zweier rât
that of-you two the-counsel

allenthalben eine gât.
everywhere alone goes.'

Dô sprach der ritter wider sie
Then said the knight toward her

‘im schadete mân rât nie,
‘to-him harmed my counsel never,

er half ouch mich vil kleine. 1215
it helped also me very little.

doch weiz ich wol daz eine:
yet know I well the one:

als ich mich verstân kan,

as I myself understand can,

der wirt ist ein hövesch man:

the host is a courtly man:

hæt er geslagen noch ehte,

had he slain still eight,

1220 der im gesagete rehte

who to-him told rightly

waz ich durch sîn wîp hân getân,

what I for his woman have done,

er hieze si her zuo mir gân,

he would-bid her hitber to me go,

wist er daz ich hie wære,

should-know he that I here were,

swie er ir dort enbære.'

however he of-her there lacked.'

1225 Dar umbe er trûrende saz,

There for he mourning sat,

müede unde harte laz

weary and very slack

zornic unde träge,

angry and sluggish,

und gebârte als er wol læge

and bore-himself as-if he well lay

ein wîle durch sîn gemach.

a while for his ease.

1230 diu frouwe gütlichen sprach,

the lady kindly spoke,

als si sach daz in verdrôz,

when she saw that him wearied,

'wan leget ir iuch in mîn schôz

'why-not lay you yourself in my lap

und ruowet biz mîn frouwe kome?

and rest until my lady come?

ez wirt vil lîhte iuwer frome:

it becomes very likely your profit:

ir sît müede unde genouwen.'

you are weary and worn.'

'ich tæte, möht ich getrouwen

'I would-do, could I trust

daz ich entwenken kunde

that I escape could

ê mich mîn frouwe funde

before me my lady found

slâfende. ob si kâme

sleeping. if she came

und mir ir gruoze benæme

and from-me her greeting took

mîn slâf, sô wurde ich nimmer frô.'

my sleep, so would-become I never glad.'

diu juncfrouwe sprach dô

the young-lady said then

'daz bewar ich: lât ez an mich.'

'that guard-against I: let it on me.'

'tuot ir?' 'jâ.' 'sô slâf ich.'

'do you?' 'yes.' 'so sleep I.'

Dô legete er sîn houbet,

Then laid he his head,

als sie im hâte erlaubet,

as she to-him had allowed,

in ir schôz und slief zehant.

in her lap and slept at-once.

ez was im alsô gewant:

it was with-him so disposed:

1235

1240

1245

er hâte manege lange naht

he had many-a long night

1250 dâ vor sô ofte gedâht

there before so often thought

wie er sîn schif vertæte

how he his ship should-spend

daz er des êre hæte

that he of-it honor had

des er nû unkünstliche verphlac.

which he now unskillfully managed.

unlange er dâ lac,

not-long he there lay,

1255 dô kam diu frouwe rîche

then came the lady rich

mit vorhten tougenliche

with fears secretly

diu lîhte ê komen möhte sîn.

who perhaps before come might be.

dô wolte daz magedîn

then wanted the little-maiden

wecken den müeden man,

wake the weary man,

1260 als sie ir frouwen vernan.

when she her lady perceived.

des wart diu grævîn gewar.

of-that became the countess aware.

baz gâhte si dar;

more hastened she thither;

si hiez in ligen lâzen.

she bade him lying leave.

über den müeden man si sâzen.

over the weary man they sat.

Dô sprach diu frouwe gemeit

Then said the lady merry

1265

‘ich weiz wol die wârheit

I know well the truth

daz ein man mit sinem lîbe

that a man with his body

nie baz gediente wîbe

never better served a-woman

dan mir diser hât getân.

than to-me this-one has done.

solt ich in des ungelônnet lân,

should I him of-that unrewarded leave,

1270

daz wære ein solhiu sünde

that were a such sin

die ich nimmer überwünde.

which I never should-overcome.

ich vernam sô verre sîne klage

I heard so greatly his lament

daz ich im hiute an disem tage

that I to-him today on this day

wolte lônên sîner arebeit.

would reward of-his hardship.

1275

mit lône bin ich hie bereit:

with reward am I here ready:

nû liget er als ein tôtez schâf;

now lies he as a dead sheep;

im ist lieber danne mîn ein slâf.

to-him is dearer than me a sleep.

nû möht er sîn slâfen haben gespart.

now might he his sleeping have spared.

nû wær ich mit im niht wol bewart:

now were I with him not well guarded:

1280

daz hân ich vil 〈wol〉 ervarn.

that have I very 〈well〉 learned.

nû sol ich mich baz bewarn.

now shall I myself better guard.

ich möhte im sô liep sîn,

I might to-him so dear be,

⟨ob⟩ er hæte baz gewartet mîn.

⟨if⟩ he had better waited of-me.

1285 iedoch koste in hiure

yet cost him this-year

kein gemach sô tiure:

no ease so dear:

sîn slâfen hât mich im benomen,

his sleeping has me from-him taken,

swaz ez im her nâch muge gefromen.

whatever it to-him here after may profit.

Dô sprach daz magedîn

Then said the little-maiden

1290 'daz müeze gote geklaget sîn,

'that may to-God lamented be,

lieber geverte.

dear companion.

daz ist ein rede herte

that is a speech hard

die mîn frouwe erhaben hât.

which my lady raised has.

wie sol ich von der missetât

how shall I from the misdeed

1295 immer werden erlöst?

ever be released?

jâ sliefe dû ûf mînen trôst.

indeed sleepest thou upon my assurance.

daz wil ich immer gote klagen

that will I ever to-God lament

daz dîn müeder lîp zerslagen

that thy weary body battered

ie wart gegeben in mîn gewalt,

ever was given into my power,

sît dû von mînen schulden salt

since thou by my fault shalt

1300

dîn dienest allen hân verlorn.

thy service all have lost.

owê daz ich ie wart geboren

alas that I ever was born

alsô schedelîchen dir!

so harmfully to-thee!

frouwe, ir sult gelouben mir,

lady, you shall believe me,

swenne man die schande

whenever one the disgrace

1305

ervert ime lande,

learns in-the land,

sô komet ir nimmer mêre

so come you never more

wider an iuwer êre,

back to your honor,

unde mac iu wesen leit,

and may to-you be grievous,

begât ir dise unhövescheit.

commit you this discourtesy.

1310

ich wæne ouch niht daz ieman lebe

I think also not that anyone lives

der immer ûf lônnes gebe

who ever upon of-reward giving

gedienet, wirt im ditz bekant:

serves, (if)-becomes to-him this known:

so ist iuwer zorn niht wol bewant.

so is your wrath not well bestowed.

1315 swenne diu werlt mit disem schaden

when the world with this harm

von iuwern schulden ist geladen,

by your fault is burdened,

ditz ist uns wîben ein misseval,

this is to-us women a mishap,

daz sich ein man niht lâzen sal

that himself a man not let shall

an unser keine nimmer mê.

on of-us any ever more.

1320 nû seht wie iu daz danne stê.

now see how to-you that then stands.

ir sult ez in niht leiden.

you shall it to-them not embitter.

die man sint doch so bescheiden

the men are yet so prudent

daz iegelîcher minner tuot

that each less does

durch wîp danne uns wære guot.

for women than to-us were good.

1325 durch got, frouwe, bedenket iu.

for God's-sake, lady, bethink yourself

hie ist nieman wan wir driu:

here is no-one except we three:

heizet in ûf stân.

bid him up stand.

solt er alsô verloren hân,

should he thus lost have,

da verlurn lîhte sehzc mite,

there would-lose perhaps sixty with,

der iegelicher gerne lite 1330
of-whom each gladly should-suffer

von guoten wîben kumber doch,
from good women affliction yet,

biz im wurde gelônnet noch.
until to-him were rewarded still.

wirt in daz von iu benomen,
(if)-is from-them that by you taken,

sô sît ir übele her komen.
so are you ill hither come.

waz ist diu werlt ân wîbes lôn? 1335
what is the world without a-woman's reward?

lebte der künic Salomôn,
should-live the king Solomon,

er kunde niht gerâten baz.
he could not counsel better.

slæfet er, weist umbe daz?’
sleeps he, knowest about that?’

Dô sprach diu grævinne
Then said the countess

‘mir ist leit daz ich mich minne 1340
‘to-me is grievous that I myself of-love

ie underwant sô verre.
ever undertook so far.

ich fürhte daz mir gewerre.
I fear that to-me may-trouble.

swem ze der minne ist ze gâch,
to-whomever to the love is too urgent,

dâ gât vil lîhte schade nâch.
there goes very likely harm after.

swer sich an stæte minne lât, 1345
whoever himself to constant love lets,

ich sage <dir> wie ez dem ergât:
I tell <to-thee> how it to-him goes:

als der ein netze stellet

as he-who a net sets

und selbe dar in vellet;

and himself there in falls;

alsô vâhent si selbe sich.

so catch they self themselves.

1350 des wil ich bewaren mich.

of-that will I guard myself.

ich wil ouch gernier wesen frî

I will also more-gladly be free

danne ich ie mannes sî.

than I ever of-a-man be.

die man sint unstæte.

the men are inconstant.

swaz ich durch disen tæte,

whatever I for this-one did,

1355 daz wære als ein bihte:

that were as a confession:

ez erfunden morgen lihte

it would-learn tomorrow perhaps

drî oder viere,

three or four,

dar nâch drîzec schiere

there after thirty quickly

unser zweier brûtloft.

of-us two the-wedding.

1360 sô wære mîn êre verkouft

so were my honor sold

umb harte kleinen gewin.

for very small gain.

von diu wil ich sîn als ich bin.'

from that will I be as I am.'

The Count Wakes

VIII

The maiden pleads again, and the countess sends word instead that he should get up and ride home. Waked and told, Moriz sends her back with a second plea; she weeps into her sleeves and is told to shut her mouth. He forces the door and goes in bloody and battered from the field, and the count, waking to an iron hose ringing on the pavement, takes him for the devil or the wild host, hears that it is the man he killed, and springs up, strikes his shin, and lies senseless all night.

Dô sprach aber diu maget

Then said again the maiden

‘ir habt daz ergeste gesaget

‘you have the worst said

daz iu her nâch mac geschehen:

that to-you here after may happen:

des besten sult ir iuch versehen.

of-the best shall you yourself expect.

ez wære guot, ders alle mite:

it were good, he-it wholly along:

nu enlæzet uns der alte site,

now lets-not us the old custom,

wir müezen tuon unde lân

we must do and leave

als noch ie wîp hânt getân.

as still ever women have done.

nû wecket in, ez ist zît.

now wake him, it is time.

swie unbetwungen ir noch sît,

however unconstrained you still are,

ir wizzet doch daz Minne

you know yet that Love

ist meister aller sinne.’

is master of-all senses.’

1365

1370

1375 'nû fürhte deheine ir meisterschaft,
'now (I)-fear no of-her mastery,

daz sie mit bete oder mit kraft
that she with entreaty or with force

an mir immer gesige.
on me ever conquer.

sô der man hie lige
so the man here lie

biz ich hin wider in gê,
until I away back in go,

1380 sô sage im daz er ûf stê
so say to-him that he up stand

und ze sîner herberge vare.
and to his lodging fare.

bit in daz er sich baz beware
ask him that he himself better guard

her nâch: daz ist sîn gewin.'
here after: that is his gain.'

hie mite gienc si wider in.
here with went she back in.

1385 Do gewan diu juncfrouwe guot
Then got the young-lady good

einen trûrigen muot
a sorrowful spirit

daz der man schanden blôz
that the man of-disgrace bare

sîner stæten minne nie genôz,
of-his constant love never profited,

und begunde si twingen

and began her to-press

vorhte von den dingen

fear from the matters

1390

daz er sie ze huote erkôs

that he her for guarding chose

und dar nâch sô wîselôs

and there after so guideless

solte varn und lônês âne.

should fare and of-reward without.

nu erwachte er von wâne.

now awoke he from delusion.

zehant als er ûf sach,

at-once when he up looked,

1395

ze der juncfrouwen er dô sprach

to the young-lady he then spoke

‘ich slief sô unsanfte nie.

I slept so uneasily never.

ich wânte mîn frouwe wære hie

I thought my lady were here

und wolte mîn niht grüezen.

and would me not greet.

wie möhte ich daz gebüezen?

how could I that amend?

1400

swenne ich ⟨ir⟩ hulde

whenever I ⟨her⟩ favor

verlür von mîner schulde,

should-lose by my fault,

sô müese ich trûren immer mê.’

so must I mourn ever more.’

dô sprach diu maget ‘owê,

then said the maiden ‘alas,

müede und unnütze barn!

weary and useless child!

1405

wir haben beide missevarn.

we have both gone-wrong

mîn frouwe hât missetân,

my lady has done-wrong,

des si immer muoz schaden hân:

of-which she ever must harm have:

ir hât ir êre verlorn

from-her has her honor lost

1410 ein unwîplîcher zorn.

an unwomanly wrath.

ich wil es wol getrouwen

I will of-it well trust

ez habe si sider gerouwen

it has her since rued

daz sie geheizen hâte.

what she promised bad.

sie kam harte drâte

she came very quickly

1415 unwizzende ûf mich.

unknowing upon me.

zewâre, des vorhte ich

truly, of-that feared I

und sach mich umbe allenthalp:

and looked myself about everywhere:

dô kam si rehte als ein alp

then came she just as an incubus

ûf mich geslichen.

upon me crept.

1420 si was vil harte erblichen

she was very greatly groun-pale

von vorhte, oder si zeigte mite

from fear, or she showed therewith

zorn unde ir unsite.'

wrath and her ill-manner.'

‘Dâ solt ir mich gewecket hân.’

‘There should you me waked have.’

‘daz hæte ich gerne getân,

‘that would-have I gladly done,

wan daz si ez mir sêre verbôt.

except that she it to-me sorely forbade.

1425

dô weste ich sicher alsen tô

then knew I sure as-the death

daz siz wan durch guot tæte.

that she-it only for good did.

nû hân ich ir unstæte

now have I her inconstancy

aller êrste rehte bekant.’

of-all first rightly known.’

‘sô ist mîn dienest unbewant’

‘so is my service unbestowed’

1430

sprach der lobes rîche,

said the of-praise rich,

‘und muoz kumberlîche

‘and must wretchedly

immer mînen schaden tragen.

ever my loss bear.

waz hiez si aber mir sagen

what bade she however to-me say

dô sie hin wider <in> gie?’

when she away back <in> went?’

1435

‘niewan daz sie iuch ligen lie

‘nothing-but that she you lying left

und daz sie iuch slâfen liez

and that she you sleep let

und dar nâch varn hiez

and there after fare bade

wider ze iuwerme gemache.’

back to your lodging.’

1440 'daz wære ein fremdiu sache,
'that were a strange thing,

solte ich nû gemach hân,
should I now ease have,

sît mir alsô ist ergân.
since to-me so is befallen.

der slâf hât gemachet
the sleep has made

daz mîn schade wachet
that my harm wakes

1445 wêrlîche lange zît.
truly a-long time.

frouwe, sît ir schuldic sît,
lady, since you guilty are,

sô tuot einez durch mich.'
so do one-thing for me.'

'zewâre, daz tuon ich,
'truly, that do I,

gefûeget ez sich immer sô.'
(if)-arranges it itself ever so.'

1450 'mîn frouwe hât mich unfrô
'my lady has me unhappy

gemachet: daz geloubet mir.
made: that believe me.

gât wider umbe zuo ir
go back around to her

und bittet sie vil sêre
and ask her very earnestly

durch aller frouwen êre
for all ladies' honor

1455 daz sie ir zorn mâze
that she her wrath moderate

und mich sus niht lâze.
and me thus not leave.

wil sie <sich über> mich armen
(if)-will she <herself over> me poor

durch got niht erbarmen,
for God's-sake not pity,

daz ist ein herte mære.
that is a hard tale.

ir lôn ist mir ze swære
her reward is to-me too heavy

dâ mit si mir vergolten hât
there with she to-me repaid has

ze schiere mîne missetât.
too quickly my misdeed.'

er mante sie mit schoener bete
he urged her with fair entreaty

unz si ditz durch in tete.
until she this for him did.

Dô gienc diu maget guote
Then went the maiden good

mit trûrigem muote
with sorrowful spirit

wider zuo ir frouwen.
back to her lady.

ir sigen an die mouwen
to-her sank onto the sleeves

die zâher und ûf die hande.
the tears and upon the hands.

si klagete gote die schande
she lamented to-God the disgrace

die ir frouwe tuon wolte.
which her lady do would.

doch tete si als si solte,
yet did she as she should,

wan er si des hâte gebeten.
for he her of-that had asked.

1460

1465

1470

si kam vil sanfte getreten

she came very softly stepping

1475 für daz bette dô si was.

before the bed where she was.

daz declachen si ûf las

the bed-spread she up gathered

und ruorte si sanfte an die hant.

and touched her softly on the hand.

als schiere sô si ir dô enphant,

as soon so she of-her then felt,

si sprach 'von wannen kumest dû

she said 'from whence comest thou

1480 oder waz wildû aber nû?'

or what wilt-thou again now?'

'frouwe, ich bin aber sîn bote

'lady, I am again his messenger

und wil iuch bitten bî dem gote

and will you ask by the God

der iu gap sêle unde lîp

who to-you gave soul and body

daz ir êret alliu wîp:

that you honor all women:

1485 lât in sus niht haben verlorn.

let him thus not have lost.

ir muget wol unser drîer zorn

you may well of-us three the-wrath

versüenen, als iu wol an stât,

reconcile, as to-you well on stands,

daz ir ze im hin ûz gât.

that you to him away out go.

ez solte veste <ein> herze sîn,

it should firm <a> heart be,

dô er gesach den schaden sîn 1490
when he saw the harm his

der im von iu geschehen was,
which to-him by you happened was,

wære ez als ein adamas,
were it as a diamond,

ez würde weich von sîner klage.'
it would-become soft from his lament.'

'nu geloube mir daz ich dir sage:
'now believe me what I to-thee say:

sîn schade wirt lîhte mêrre. 1495
his harm becomes perhaps greater.

erwachet mîn hêrre,
(if)-awakes my lord,

wirt er sîn innen,
(if)-becomes he of-it aware,

sô kumt er nimmer hinnen.
so comes he never hence.

von diu var er, sî er ein wîser man,
from that fare he, be he a wise man,

abe wege als er kan. 1500
off road as he can.

dû weist niht waz dû schaffest,
thou knowest not what thou contrivest,

wan daz dû dich selben affest,
except that thou thyself self makest-a-fool,

tuo dînen munt zuo:
make thy mouth shut:

ich wil slâfen unze fruo.'
I will sleep until morning.'

umbe sie sich kêrte, 1505
around she herself turned,

als sie ir zorn lêrte,
as her her wrath taught,

und gebârte als si sliefe.

and bore-herself as-if she slept.

do ersûfte vil tiefe

then sighed very deeply

diu maget und weinte ditze leit.

the maiden and wept this sorrow.

1510 stille swîgent sie dô schreit.

quietly keeping-silent she then strode.

Nû bran ein licht in einem glas,

Now burned a light in a glass,

daz alle naht dâ was.

which all night there was.

do begunde ouch in verlangen.

then began also him to-long.

er was nâch ir gegangen

he had after her gone

1515 ze der türe und beite biz si kam.

to the door and waited until she came.

als er die mære vernam,

when he the tidings heard,

dô wart sîn herze in riuwen,

then became his heart in sorrows,

und sprach iedoch mit triuwen

and spoke yet with faithfulness

‘frouwe, ich wil iuch gote ergeben.

‘lady, I will you to-God commend.

1520 mir ist unmære umb daz leben:

to-me is indifferent about the life:

nû wil ouch ichz verliesen hie,

now will also I-it lose here,

ich enspreche selbe wider sie.

I unless-speak myself toward her.

ich wil dar in zuo in gân

I will there in to them go

und vernemen waz ich habe getân.

and hear what I have done.

An die türe er sêre drukete,

On the door he hard pressed,

1525

ûf hôher er si rukete

up higher he it shoved

und gienc vaste drâte

and went very quickly

in die kemenâte,

into the chamber,

rehte als ich iu sagen wil.

just as I to-you say will.

er was gezieret niht ze vil:

he was adorned not too much:

1530

in hâten slege alsô gemuot

him had blows so afflicted

daz im von der stirnen daz bluot

that to-him from the brow the blood

für diu ougen was gegangen

before the eyes had gone

und an die brâwen gehangen:

and on the brows hung:

dâ sach er ûz mit zorne,

there looked he out with wrath,

1535

der frome wol geborne,

the worthy well born,

als ein lewe nâch der spîse.

as a lion after the food.

er sleich vaste lîse:

he crept very softly:

dâ sliefen si beide.

there slept they both.

- 1540 dem grâven was vil leide
to-the count was very grievously
 geschehen, und lac als ein man
happened, and lay as a man
 der von sorgen niht ruowen kan.
who from cares not rest can.
 vil dicke <er> erschrikte,
very often <he> started,
 daz er ûf blikte,
so-that he up looked,
- 1545 wan er sus mit gedanken ranc.
for he thus with thoughts wrestled.
 dar nâch slief er über lanc.
there after slept he over long.
 unlange tet er daz.
not-long did he that.
 her Mauricius gienc fürbaz.
sir Moriz went further.
 sîner hosen eine
of-his hose one
- 1550 an dem gerehten beine
on the right leg
 erklanc ûf den esterich.
rang upon the pavement.
 dô sach der grâve übersich
then looked the count upward
 und erschrac und mit <dem> munde
and started and with <the> mouth
 keinen segen er kunde.
no blessing he knew.
- 1555 mit zittern er gemachte
with trembling he brought-about
 daz ouch diu frouwe erwachte.
that also the lady awoke.

sîn wambes was zerbrochen,

his doublet was broken,

durchslagen und durchstochen,

battered-through and pierced-through,

bluotic und verhouwen.

bloody and hacked.

der hêrre sprach ze der frouwen

the lord said to the lady

1560

‘uns ist der tiuvel nâhen bî,

‘to-us is the devil near by,

swannen er her komen sî,

whencesoever he hither come be,

oder daz wüetende her.

or the raging host.

ez ensî daz uns got ner,

it unless-be that us God save,

sô verliesen wir den lîp.

so lose we the life.

1565

er vorhte im harter dan sîn wîp:

he feared for-himself harder than his woman:

si bekante den helt sâ.

she recognized the hero at-once.

der grâve sprach ‘wer gât dâ?’

the count said ‘who goes there?’

‘Daz wil ich iu gerne sagen:

‘That will I to-you gladly say:

daz ist der den ir hât erslagen.

that is he whom you have slain.

1570

ir müezet mîn geselle

you must my comrade

immer (sîn) ze helle,

ever (be) in hell,

des enist dehein rât,

of-that is no help,

sît ir mich dar gefrumet hât.

since you me thither sent have.

1575 der wirt von der vorhte erschrac

the host from the fear started

und spranc ûf dâ er lac,

and sprang up where he lay,

als im ditz wunder erschein,

when to-him this marvel appeared,

und stiez sich an ein schinebein,

and struck himself on a shin-bone,

daz er alle die naht

so-that he all the night

1580 lac in sîner âmaht.

lay in his swoon.

He Takes Back the Ring

IX

Moriz gets into the bed, and the countess, not knowing whether her husband is alive or dead, yields to him. Then he stands, draws her ring off his own finger and gives it back, leaves her to her dishonored husband, and rides off to spend more than ever on praise. She repents too late: she has disgraced herself, she curses the hour her wrongful quarrel won, and she counsels every constant lover to look at her loss first. The poet closes on how hard German is to rhyme.

Als ditz der ritter gesach,

When this the knight saw,

er gienc ze dem bette unde sprach

he went to the bed and spoke

‘ditz bette ist halbez lære:

‘this bed is half empty:

ichn weiz wer hie wære:

I-not know who here were:

ich wil geruowen hier an.'

I will rest here on.'

1585

daz declachen leite er dan,

the bed-spread laid he aside,

er slouf zuo ir hin under.

he slipped to her thither under.

daz was ein michel wunder

that was a great wonder

daz sie enwiste an dirre nôt

that she knew-not in this distress

ir man lebet oder wære tât.

her husband lived or were dead.

1590

si getorste zuo im niht komen:

she dared to him not come:

ir hâte der <zouber> benomen

from-her had the <magic> taken

beide witze unde sin.

both wits and mind.

iedoch sprach si wider in

yet said she toward him

'ir sît der kûeneste man

'you are the boldest man

1595

des ich ie kunde gewan,

of-whom I ever knowledge got,

daz irz sô tiure wâget.

that you-it so dearly risk.

ir hâtet niht gefrâget

you had not asked

ob ich ez wolte oder niht.

whether I it would or not.

1600 ich wæne ein wunder hie geschiht
I think a wonder here happens

dâ man immer von saget
there one ever of tells

biz der jüngste tac taget.
until the last day dawns.'

sie gedâhte 'es ist kein rât:
she thought 'of-it is no remedy:

sît ez sich gefüezet hât,
since it itself arranged has,

1605 ich muoz nû tuon unde lân
I must now do and leave

swaz er mit mir wil begân.
whatever he with me will do.

nû lîde ichz gûetlîche,
now suffer I-it kindly,

daz im sîn zorn entwîche.
that from-him his wrath depart.'

si kusten unde kusten aber.
they kissed and kissed again.

1610 dehein antwurt engaber,
no answer gave-he,

swes si in gefrâgte.
whatever she him asked.

als si des betrâgte,
as she of-that wearied,

si begreif in mit den armen.
she seized him with the arms.

nu begunde er ouch erwarmen,
now began he also to-warm,

1615 und tet der frouwen ichn weiz waz.
and did to-the lady I-not know what.

waz hülfez iuch, saget ich daz?
what would-help-it you, should-tell I that?

ez ist sus alsô guot.

it is thus as good.

ir wizzet wol waz man tuot:

you know well what one does:

alsô tâten sie ouch hie.

so did they also here.

zehant alsô ditz ergie,

at-once when this passed,

ûf stuont der wîgant

up stood the warrior

und nam von sîner wîzen hant

and took from his white hand

ein vingerlîn drâte,

a ring quickly,

daz si im gegeben hâte.

whiche she to-him given had.

er sprach 'nemt wider iuwer golt.

he said 'take back your gold.

ich wil iu nimmer werdenholt.

I will to-you never become gracious.

ir sît unverwizen.

you are witless.

ich hâte mich ie geflizen,

I had myself ever exerted,

swaz ich gedienen kunde,

whatever I earn could,

daz ich iu des wol gunde,

that I to-you of-it well granted,

biz hînaht an dise zît.

until tonight at this time.

wæren alliu wîp als ir sît,

were all women as you are,

ich gediente ir keiner nimmer mê.

I would-serve of-them none ever more.

1620

1625

1630

nû ziuwerm manne (dem ist wê),
now to-your husband (to-him is woe),

1635 und habet den ân êre.
and have him without honor.

ich vergilte iu nimmer mêre
I repay to-you never more

disen lasterbæren roup.
this shameful robbery.'

alsô nam er urloup,
so took he leave,

und fuor sît dicker unde mê
and fared afterward oftener and more

1640 dann er dâ vor tæte ê,
than he there before did before,

do er umbe sie des muote.
when he for her of-that strove.

mit maneger slahte guote
with many-a kind goods

er koufte lop und êre.
he bought praise and honor.

do gerou ez sie vil sêre,
then rued it her very sorely,

1645 dô man sîn wort sô wol sprach,
when one his word so well spoke,

daz im ie leit von ir geschach,
that to-him ever sorrow by her happened,

und gienc ir sô nâhen
and went to-her so near

daz wol die liute sâhen
that well the people saw

und markten alle garwe
and marked all wholly

1650 des wandel nam ir varwe.
of-that change took her color.

si gedâhte 'ez ist reht unde wol

she thought 'it is right and well

daz ich von schulden kumber dol.

that I by fault affliction suffer.

von grôzer liebe dol ich leit.

from great love suffer I sorrow.

dar umbe trage ich arebeit,

there for bear I hardship,

die ich mir selber gewan.

which I for-me self won.

solte ich wûnschen einen man

should I wish a husband

immer ze mînem lîbe,

ever for my body,

wie môhte er danne wîbe

how might he then for-a-woman

sîn rehter unde baz getân

be more-right and better made

dan er ist den ich verloren hân?

than he is whom I lost have?

des wil ich fluochen der zît

of-that will I curse the time

dô mich mîn unrehter strît

when me my wrongful contention

an streit unz er mich überwant;

on fought until it me overcame;

ich hân mich selben geschant.

I have myself self disgraced.

der schande wûrde guot rât:

of-the disgrace would-become good remedy:

ich bin diu den schaden hât

I am she-who the harm has

al die wîle sô ich lebe,

all the while as I live,

1655

1660

1665

ez ensî daz mir got gebe
it unless-be that to-me God give

daz heil und die sinne
the welfare and the senses

1670 daz er mich von herzen minne.
that he me from heart love.

daz markte diu juncfrouwe wol,
that marked the young-lady well,

und tete reht als man sol:
and did right as one should:

swanne dem manne missegât,
whenever to-the man goes-ill,

swer danne helfe unde rât
whoever then help and counsel

1675 an sînen friunt kêret,
on his friend turns,

wie der sich selben êret!
how he himself self honors!

wan rât ist bezzer an der zît
for counsel is better at the time

dan helfen sô der man gelît.
than helping when the man lies.

Ditz was an der stunde
This was at the hour

1680 do ez sumeren begunde.
when it to-summer began.

die vogeles in dem walde
the birds in the wood

lûte unde balde
loudly and boldly

sungen manege stimme.
sang many-a voice.

die rôsen und die brimme

the roses and the broom

bluoten alle wider strît.

bloomed all in rivalry.

1685

ez was rehte an der zît

it was just at the time

sô man unfreude hazzet.

when one joylessness bates.

sich hâte gevazzet

itself had arrayed

der walt unde schoeniu kleit

the wood and fair garments

gegen dem sumer an geleit:

toward the summer on put:

1690

diu loup grüne und darunder gras,

the leaves green and thereunder grass,

daz ez schône gemuonet was

so-that it fairly mosaicked was

mit maneger hande blüete.

with many-a kind bloom.

ditz machet guot gemüete,

this makes good spirit,

swer an freude hât gedanc,

whoever on joy has thought,

1695

und ouch der vogele süezer sanc.

and also the birds' sweet song.

Fruo an einem morgen

Early on a morning

dô mohte sie von sorgen

then could-not she from cares

geslâfen noch geligen dâ.

sleep nor lie there.

diu frouwe stuont ûf sâ.

the lady stood up at-once.

1700

dô gienc si durch ir trûren

then went she for her mourning

dâ über die burcmûren

where over the castle-walls

ein loube was gehangen.

a gallery was hung.

dar kam si eine gegangen:

thither came she alone walking:

1705 in ein venster sie gestuont,

in a window she stood,

als senendiu wîp ofte tuont

as pining women often do

den leit von liebe ist geschehen;

to-whom sorrow from love has happened;

diu muoz man trûrende sehen.

them must one mourning see.

alsô waz ez 〈ir〉 ergân.

so was it 〈to-her〉 befallen.

1710 ir wîze hant wol getân

her white hand well made

leite si an daz wange

laid she on the cheek

und loste dem vogelsange.

and listened to-the bird-song.

dô sanc vil wol diu nahtigal.

then sang very well the nightingale.

si sprach 'wol in der leben sal

she said 'well to-them who live shall

1715 mit freuden, als ich tæte

with joys, as I would-do

ob ich mirs gestatet hæte.

if I to-me-of-it allowed had.

nû muoz <ich> immer mêre

now must <I> ever more

mit grôzem schaden ân êre

with great harm without honor

mîne jugent verslîzen.

my youth wear-away.

wem sol ich daz nû wîzen

to-whom shall I that now impute

1720

daz ich hin für vergebene

that I thither forth in-vain

einem tôtlichen lebene

to-a deathly life

muoz sîn bereit und undertân?

must be ready and subject?

des gunde ich mir: von diu ichz hân.

of-that granted I to-me: from that I-it have.

daz muoz gote sîn geklaget.'

that must to-God be lamented.'

1725

nû was diu juncfrouwe, ir maget,

now had the young-lady, her maiden,

geslichen ouch durch baneken dar

crept also for pastime thither

und hôrte ir frouwen klage gar.

and heard her lady's lament wholly.

swie schuldic si wære,

however guilty she were,

si muote doch ir swære,

her moved yet her grief,

1730

daz sie dâ mohte niht gestân,

so-that she there could not stand,

und wolte wider in gân:

and would back in go:

ir klage was sô jâmerlich.

her lament was so piteous.

dô sach diu frouwe hindersich

then looked the lady behind-herself

1735 und sprach zehant wider sie

and said at-once toward her

‘bistû deheine wîle hie?’

‘art-thou any while here?’

‘jâ. ich hân ez gar vernomen

‘yes. I have it wholly heard

daz iu ist in daz herze komen;

what to-you is into the heart come;

daz müejet <mich> und ist mir leit.

that grieves <me> and is to-me grievous.

1740 ich saget iu ê die wârheit:

I told to-you before the truth:

dô moht ir des gelouben niet.

then could you of-it believe not.

sô wizzet doch daz ichz iu riet.

so know yet that I-it to-you counseled.

‘jâ, ich weiz rehte,

‘yes, I know rightly,

der mich frô mehte,

who me glad could-(make),

1745 der swente sîne sünde

let-him wipe-away his sin

als stille des meres gründe.

as still (as)-the sea’s depths.

ich mac aber nimmer werden frô,

I can however never become glad,

ez enfüege sich mir <sô>

it unless-arrange itself for-me <so>

daz er mich noch frô gesetze

that he me yet glad set

und ouch mit güete ergetze

and also with kindness requite

1750

von dem ich disen kumber trage

from whom I this affliction bear

beide naht unde tage.

both night and day.

mich riuwet daz im ie geschach

me rues that to-him ever happened

von mir dehein ungemach.

from me any discomfort.

diu riuwe kumet ze spâte.

the rue comes too late.

1755

hæte ich dînem râte

had I to-thy counsel

gevolget, daz wære mir guot.

followed, that were to-me good.

swer âne rât dicke tuot

whoever without counsel often does

nâch sînem willen für sich,

after his will for himself,

den geriuwet ez als mich.

him rues it as me.

1760

nû riuwet mîchs an der unzît.

now rues me-it at the wrong-time.

ich wânde daz der wîbe strît

I thought that the women's contention

ze rehte vor solte gân.

by right before should go.

dâ von ich disen schaden hân.

there from I this harm have.

1765 nû ist daz reht an mir gebrochen.
now is the right on me broken.

er hât sich an mir gerochen
he has himself on me avenged

dâ mit daz er mich mîdet.
there with that he me shuns.

mîn herze kumber lîdet
my heart affliction suffers

und nôt biz an mîn ende.
and distress until at my end.

1770 an ditz gestrakt gebende
into this tightened bond

bin ich von schulden gevallen.
am I by fault fallen.

von diu rât ich in allen,
from that counsel I to-them all,

swer stætliclicher minne
whoever of-constant love

hinnen für beginne,
hence forth begin,

1775 daz der an mînen kumber sehe
that he on my affliction look

und hüete daz im alsame geschehe.
and beware lest to-him likewise happen.'

Nû lâzet dise rede varn.
Now let this speech fare.

tiuschiu zunge diu ist arn:
German tongue it is poor:

swer dar inne wil tihten,
whoever there in will compose,

1780 sol <er> die rede rihten,
(if)-shall <he> the speech order,

sô muoz er wort spalten

so must he words split

und zwei zesamen valten.

and two together fold.

daz tæte ich gerne, kunde ich daz,

that would-do I gladly, could I that,

meisterlîcher unde baz.

more-masterly and better.

KONRAD VON WÜRZBURG

Daz Herzemære

The Tale of the Heart

The Prologue, and the Parting

I

The poet opens on pure love grown strange to the world, cites Gottfried of Strasbourg, and offers the tale as a mirror for knights and ladies. A knight and a lady had woven life and heart into one, but she was married, and her husband, reading it in their faces, resolves to take her overseas until the love wears out. When the knight makes to follow, she asks him to sail first and alone, so that her husband will stay; she gives him her ring and asks a kiss, and he consents, fearing he will die before he sees her again.

Ich brüefe in mîme sinne,

I judge in my mind,

daz lûterlichiu minne

that pure love

der werlte ist worden wilde,

to-the world is become strange,

dâ von sô sulent bilde

there from so shall an-example

ritter unde frouwen

knights and ladies

5

an disem mære schouwen,

in this tale behold,

wan ez von ganzer liebe seit.

for it of whole love tells.

des bringet uns gewisheit

of-that brings us assurance

von Strâzburc meister Gotfrit:

of Strasbourg master Gottfried:

swer ûf der wâren minne trit

whoever upon the true love's path

10

wil ebene setzen sînen fuoz,

will evenly set his foot,

daz er benamen hœren muoz

that he indeed hear must

sagen unde singen

telling and singing

von herzenlichen dingen,

of heartfelt things,

15 diu ê wâren den geschehen,

which before were to-those happened,

die sich heten undersehen

who themselves had looked-on-each-other

mit minneclîchen ougen.

with loving eyes.

diu rede ist âne lougen:

the account is without denial:

er minnet iemer deste baz,

he loves ever the-more better,

20 swer von minnen etewaz

whoever of love something

hœret singen oder lesen;

bears sing or read;

dar umbe wil ich flîzic wesen,

there for will I diligent be,

daz ich diz schœne mære

that I this fair tale

mit rede alsô bewære,

with words so authenticate,

25 daz man dar ane kiesen mûge

that one there in perceive may

ein bilde, daz der minne tûge,

an example, that for-the love avail,

diu lûter und diu reine

which pure and which clean

sol sîn vor allem meine.

shall be free-of all falsehood.

- Ein ritter und ein frouwe guot
A knight and a lady good
- diu heten leben unde muot 30
they had life and spirit
- in ein ander sô verweben,
into one another so woven,
- daz beid' ir muot und ir leben
that both' their spirit and their life
- ein dinc was genzlich unde gar:
one thing was wholly and entirely:
- swaz der frouwen arges war,
whatever to-the lady of-ill was,
- daz war ouch dem ritter; 35
that was also to-the knight;
- dâ von ze jungest bitter
there from at last bitter
- wart ir ende leider.
became their end alas.
- diu minne was ir beider
the love was of-them both
- worden sô gewaltec,
become so mighty,
- daz si vil manicvaltec 40
that it very manifold
- mahte in herzesmerzen.
made to-them heart-pains.
- grôz smerze wart ir herzen
great pain became to-their hearts
- von der süezen minne kunt.
from the sweet love known.

si hæte si biz an den grunt
it had them until at the bottom

45 mit ir fiure enzündet
with its fire kindled

und alsô gar durchgründet
and so wholly penetrated-through

mit minneclicher trûtschaft,
with loving intimacy,

daz niemer möhte ir liebe kraft
that never could their love's power

mit rede werden z'ende brâht.
with words be to-end brought.

50 ir lûterlichen andâht
their pure devotion

nieman künde vollesagen.
no-one could fully-tell.

nie ganzer triuwe wart getragen
never more-whole faithfulness was borne

von manne noch von wîbe,
by man nor by woman,

danne ouch in ir libe
than also in their bodies

55 si zwei zesamene truogen.
they two together bore.

joch kunden si mit fuogen
yet could they with propriety

zuo ein ander komen niht,
to one another come not,

alsô daz si zer minne pfliht
so that they to-the love's practice

ir gernden willen möhten hân.
their desiring will might have.

daz süeze wîp vil wol getân

the sweet woman very well made

60

hæt' einen werden man zer ê,

had' a worthy man in-the marriage,

des wart ir herzen dicke wê,

of-that became to-her heart often woe,

wan ir schœne was behuot

for her beauty was guarded

sô vaste, daz der herre guot

so fast, that the lord good

nie mohte an ir gestillen

never could in her still

65

sîns wunden herzen willen,

of-his wounded heart's desire,

daz nâch ir minne lac versniten.

which after her love lay cut.

des wart diu nôt von in geliten,

of-that was the distress by them endured,

diu strenge was und engeslich.

which harsh was and dreadful.

nâch ir libe minneclich

after her body lovely

70

begunde er alsô vaste queln,

began he so greatly to-pine,

daz er sînen pîn verheln

that he his pain conceal

niht mohte vor ir manne.

not could from her husband.

zuo der schœnen danne

to the fair-one then

75 reit er swenne ez mohte sîn

rode he whenever it could be

und tet ir dô mit clage schîn

and made to-her then with lament manifest

sînes herzen ungemach;

of-his heart's discomfort;

dâ von ze jungest ime geschach

there from at last to-him happened

ein leit, daz in beswârte.

a sorrow, that him burdened.

80 der frouwen man der vârte

the lady's husband he watched

mit starker huote ir beider

with strong guarding of-them both

sô lange, biz er leider

so long, until he alas

an ir gebærden wart gewar,

in their bearing became aware,

daz si diu süeze Minne gar

that them the sweet Love wholly

85 hæt' in ir stric verworren,

had' in her snare entangled,

daz si muosten dorren

so-that they must wither

nâch ein ander beide.

after one another both.

dar umbe wart vil leide

there for became very grievous

deme guoten herren dô.

to-the good lord then.

90 er dâhte wider sich alsô:

he thought toward himself thus:

«enhüete ich mînes wîbes niht,

«guard I of-my woman not,

mîn ouge lîhte an ir gesiht

my eye perhaps on her sees

daz mich her nâch geriuwet,

what me here after rues,

wan si mir schaden briuwet

for she to-me harm brews

mit disem werden edelen man.

with this worthy noble man.

deiswâr ob ich ez füegen kan,

truly if I it arrange can,

ich bringes' ûzer sîner wer.

I bring-her' out-of his power.

über daz vil wilde mer

over the very wild sea

wil ich zwâre mit ir varn,

will I truly with her fare,

durch daz ich künne si bewarn

so that I may her guard

vor ime biz daz er gar von ir

from him until that he wholly from her

gewenke sînes herzen gir

turn of-his heart's desire

und si den muot von im geneme.

and she the spirit from him take.

ich hôrte sagen ie, daz deme

I heard say ever, that to-him

sîn liep vil sanfte würde leit,

his beloved very easily would-become hateful,

der mit langer stâtikeit

who with long constancy

von im gescheiden würde gar:

from him parted would-become wholly;

95

100

105

dar umbe ich gerne mit ir var
there for I gladly with her fare

zuo deme frônen gotes grabe,
to the holy God's grave,

110 biz daz si gar vergezzen habe
until that she wholly forgotten has

der hôhen liebe, die si treit
the high love, which she bears

dem werden ritter vil gemeit.»
to-the worthy knight very merry.»

Alsus kam er über ein,
Thus came he to agreement,

daz er den gelieben zwein
that he to-the loving two

115 ir trûtschaft wolte leiden,
their intimacy would embitter,

diu niemer doch gescheiden
which never yet parted

mohte werden under in.
could become between them.

er kêrte dar ûf sînen sin,
he turned there upon his mind,

daz er mit der frouwen
that he with the lady

120 benamen wolte schouwen
indeed would behold

Jherusalêm daz reine lant.
Jerusalem the pure land.

und dô der ritter daz bevant,
and when the knight that learned,

der nâch ir werden minne bran,
who after her worthy love burned,

dô wart der muotsieche man

then became the spirit-sick man

vil schiere des ze râte,

very soon of-that to counsel,

daz er nâch ir drâte

that he after her quickly

wolde ouch varen über mer.

would also fare over sea.

in dûhte daz er âne wer

to-him seemed that he without defense

dâ heime tât gelæge,

there at-home dead would-lie,

ob er sich des verwæge,

if he himself of-that renounced,

daz er wendic würde.

that he turning-back would-become.

der strengen minne bürde

the harsh love's burden

twanc sô vaste sînen lîp,

pressed so hard his body,

daz er durch daz schœne wîp

that he for the fair woman

wær' in den grimmen tât gevarn;

would' into the grim death have-fared;

dar umbe er doch niht langer sparn

there for he yet no longer delay

wolte nâch ir sîne vart.

would after her his journey.

und dô des an im innen wart

and when of-that in him aware became

diu süeze tugende rîche,

the sweet of-virtue rich,

125

130

135

- 140 besante in minneclîche
summoned him lovingly
 daz vil keiserliche wîp.
the very imperial woman.
 «friunt herre», sprach si, «lieber lîp,
«friend lord», said she, «dear life,
 mîn man ist an den willen komen,
my husband is to the purpose come,
 als dû wol selbe hât vernomen,
as thou well thyself hast heard,
- 145 daz er mich flæhen wil von dir.
that he me carry-away will from thee.
 nû volge trût geselle mir
now follow dear comrade me
 durch dîner hôhen sælden art
by of-thy high fortune's nature
 und erwende dise vart,
and turn-aside this journey,
 die sîn lîp hât ûf geleit,
which his person has up laid,
- 150 über daz wilde mere breit:
over the wild sea broad:
 var alters eine drüber ê,
fare utterly alone over-it first,
 dar umbe daz er hie bestê;
there for that he here remain;
 wan swenne er hât von dir vernomen,
for whenever he has from thee heard,
 daz dû bist vor über komen,
that thou art before over come,
- 155 sô belîbet er zehant
so remains he at-once
 und wirt der arcwân erwant,
and becomes the suspicion turned-aside,

den sîn lîp hât ûfe mich;

which his person has upon me;

wan er gedenket wider sich:

for he thinks toward himself:

«wære an disen dingen iht

«were in these matters anything

des mîn herze sich versiht

of-which my heart itself suspects

160

an mînem schœnen wîbe guot,

in my fair woman good,

der werde ritter hôchgemuot

the worthy knight high-minded

wære niht von lande komen.»

would-have not from land come.»

sus wirt der zwîfel ime benomen,

thus becomes the doubt from-him taken,

den wider mich sîn herze treit;

which against me his heart bears;

165

ouch sol dir niht wesen leit,

also shall to-thee not be grievous,

ob dû bist eine wîle dort,

if thou art a while yonder,

biz man verredet hie daz wort,

until one talks-away here the word,

daz von uns fliuget über lant.

which of us flies over land.

sô dich her wider hât gesant

when thee hither back has sent

170

der vil süeze reine Crist,

the very sweet pure Christ,

sô hâstû sam mir alle frist

so hast-thou as-with me all time

dînen willen destе baz,

thy will the-more better,

ob man gar verredet daz,
if one wholly talks-away that,

175 daz man ûf uns ze mære saget.
which one upon us as tale tells.

dem edelen gote sî ez geclaget,
to-the noble God be it lamented,

daz dû nâch deme willen dîn
that thou after the will thy

niht iemer maht bî mir gesîn
not ever mayst by me be

und ich bî dir nâch mîner ger.
and I by thee after my desire.

180 nû ganc, vil lieber herre, her,
now go, very dear lord, hither,

enphâch von mir daz vingerlîn:
receive from me the ring:

dâ bî soltû der swære mîn
there by shalt-thou of-the grief my

gedenken under stunden,
think at times,

dâ mite ich bin gebunden,
there with I am bound,

185 sô dich mîn ouge niht ensiht:
when thee my eye not sees:

wan zwære, swaz mir joch geschiht,
for truly, whatever to-me even happens,

ich muoz an dich gedenken.
I must on thee think.

dîn vart diu kan mir senken
thy journey it can to-me sink

jâmer in mîns herzen grunt.
misery into of-my heart's depth.

gip mir her an mînen munt
give to-me here on my mouth

190

einen sūezen friundes kus
a sweet friend's kiss

unde tuo durch mich alsus,
and do for me thus,

alse ich hân gesaget dir.»
as I have said to-thee.»

«gerne, frouwe», sprach er z'ir
«gladly, lady», said he to-her

ûz trüebes herzen sinne,
out-of a-troubled heart's mind,

195

«swaz ich dar an gewinne,
«whatever I there in gain,

ich tuon mit willen, swaz ir went.
I do with will, whatever you wish.

ich hân sô gar an iuch versent
I have so wholly on you consumed-with-longing

herze, muot und ouch den sin,
heart, spirit and also the mind,

daz ich iu von rehte bin
that I to-you by right am

200

eigenlichen undertân.
utterly subject.

lânt mich iuvern urloup hân,
let me your leave have,

ûz erwelte frouwe guot,
out chosen lady good,

und wizzent, daz mîn sender muot
and know, that my pining spirit

nâch iu muoz grôzen kumber doln.
after you must great affliction suffer.

205

ich bin sô gar an iuch verquoln

I am so wholly on you pined-away

mit herzen und mit lîbe,

with heart and with body,

liebest aller wîbe,

dearest of-all women,

daz ich des michel angest habe,

that I of-that great dread have,

210 man trage tôten mich ze grabe,

one bear dead me to grave,

ê mir diu sælde mê geschehe,

before to-me the fortune more happen,

daz ich iuch iemer mê gesehe.»

that I you ever more see.»

The Knight Dies Overseas

II

They part with more pain than can be told. He takes the first ship, walls grief into his heart, keeps to the dry bough of sorrow, and pines until his sickness is plain in his face. Dying, he tells his servant to have his body opened, his heart embalmed and shut with her ring in a little casket of gold and gems, and carried to her. The servant obeys; but at her castle the husband rides out hawking, sees the casket at the servant's belt, takes it by force, and finds the heart and the ring within.

Hie mite was diu rede hin,

Here with was the speech gone,

die si dô triben under in

which they then carried-on among them

215 von ir herzeleide.

of their heart-sorrow.

diu zwei gelieben beide

the two lovers both

schiedен sich mit marter

parted themselves with torment

und twungen sich dô harter

and pressed themselves then harder

ze herzen an der stunde,

to heart at the hour,

mê danne ich mit dem munde

more than I with the mouth

iu bescheiden künne.

to-you describe can.

an werltlicher wünne

in worldly delight

lac ir beider herze tô;

lay of-them both heart dead;

ir lichten münde rôsenrôt

their bright mouths rose-red

vil senfter minne pflâgen,

very tender love practiced,

dar nâch si sich verwâgen

there after they themselves renounced

aller fröiden under in.

of-all joys among them.

der werde ritter kêrte hin

the worthy knight turned away

mit jâmer an daz mer zehant.

with misery to the sea at-once.

den êrsten kiel, den er dô vant,

the first keel, that he there found,

dô wart er inn' über brâht.

there was he in' over brought.

er hæte sich des wol bedâht,

he had himself of-that well resolved,

220

225

230

daz er ûf der erden

that he upon the earth

nimêre wolde werden

never-more would become

235 fröidehaft noch rehte frô,

joyful nor right glad,

got gefuogte ez danne alsô,

God unless-arranged it then so,

daz er ze lande kâme

that he to land should-come

und etewaz vernæme

and something should-bear

von der lieben frouwen sîn.

of the dear lady his.

240 des wart sîn herzeclicher pîn

of-that became his heartfelt pain

vil strenge und ouch vil bitter.

very harsh and also very bitter.

der tugenthafte ritter

the virtuous knight

begunde nâch ir trûren

began after her to-mourn

und in sîn herze mûren

and into his heart to-wall

245 vil jâmerlîche riuwe.

very piteous rue.

sîn altiu sorge niuwe

his old care new

nâch ir süezen minne wart.

after her sweet love became.

der reinen türtel-tûben art

the pure turtle-dove's nature

tet er offenlîche schîn,

made he openly manifest,

wan er nâch dem liebe sîn

for he after the beloved his

250

vermeit der grünen fröiden zwî

shunned the green joys' twig

und wonte stæteclichen bî

and dwelt constantly by

der durren sorgen aste.

the dry cares' bough.

er sente nâch ir vaste

he pined after her greatly

und wart sîn leit sô rehte starc,

and became his sorrow so right strong,

255

daz ime der jâmer durch daz marc

that to-him the misery through the marrow

dranc biz an der sêle grunt;

pressed even to the soul's bottom;

er wart vil tiefer sorgen wunt

he became of-very deep cares wounded

und inneclicher swære.

and of-inward grief.

der sende marterære

the pining martyr

260

sprach ze maneger stunde

spoke at many-an hour

mit siufzebæren munde:

with sighing mouth:

«gêret sî daz reine wîp,

«honored be the pure woman,

der leben und der süezer lîp

whose life and whose sweet body

mir gît sô herzeclichen pîn.

to-me gives so heartfelt pain.

265

jâ si liebiu frouwe mîn,

indeed she dear lady my,

wie kan ir süeziu meisterschaft

how can her sweet mastery

sô bitterlicher nôete kraft

so bitter distress's force

senden mir ze herzen!

send to-me to heart!

270 wie mac sô grôzen smerzen

how can so great pain

ir vil sælic lîp gegeben!

her very blessed person give!

sol si træsten niht mîn leben,

(if)-shall she comfort not my life,

sô bin ich endelichen tôet.»

so am I utterly dead.»

in dirre clagenden herzenôt

in this lamenting heart-distress

275 was er mit jâmer alle tage

was he with misery all days

und treip sô lange dise clage,

and carried-on so long this lament,

biz er ze jungest wart geleit

until he at last was laid

in alsô grôze sendekeit,

into so great pining,

daz er niht langer mohte leben.

that he no longer could live.

280 im wart sô grimmiu nôet gegeben,

to-him was so grim distress given,

daz man wol ûzen an im sach

that one well outwardly on him saw

den tougenlichen ungemach,

the secret discomfort,

den innerhalb sîn herze truoc.

which within his heart bore.

und dô der werde ritter kluoc

and when the worthy knight fine

der leiden mære sich versach,

of-the grievous tidings himself perceived,

daz ime ze sterbenne geschach,

that to-him to die befell,

dô sprach er zuo dem knehte sîn:

then said he to the servant his:

«vernim mich, trût geselle mîn,

«bear me, dear comrade my,

ich bevinde leider wol,

I perceive alas well,

daz ich benamen sterben sol

that I indeed die shall

durch mîne lieben frouwen,

for my dear lady,

wan si mich hât verhouwen

for she me has beun

biz ûf den tôt mit sender clage.

even upon the death with pining lament.

dar umbe tuo daz ich dir sage:

there for do what I to-thee say:

swenne ich sî verdorben

when I be perished

und ich lige erstorben

and I lie dead

durch daz keiserliche wîp,

for the imperial woman,

sô heiz mir snîden ûf den lip

so bid for-me cut open the body

und nim dar ûz mîn herze gar

and take there out my heart wholly

bluotic unde riuwevar,

bloody and rue-colored,

285

290

295

300

daz soltû denne salben

that shalt-thou then anoint

mit balsame allenthalben,

with balsam all-over,

durch daz ez lange frisch bestê.

so that it long fresh remain.

vernim waz ich dir sage mê:

hear what I to-thee say more:

305 frume ein ledelin cleine

get a little-casket small

von golde und von gesteine,

of gold and of gems,

dar in mîn tôtez herze tuo

there in my dead heart put

und lege daz vingerlîn dar zuo,

and lay the ring there to,

daz mir gap diu frouwe mîn;

which to-me gave the lady my;

310 sô diu zwei zuo ein ander sîn

when the two to one another be

verslozen und versigelet,

shut-in and sealed,

sô brinc alsô verrigelet

so bring thus bolted

si beidiu mîner frouwen,

them both to-my lady,

durch daz si müge schouwen,

so that she may behold,

315 waz ich von ir hân erliten

what I from her have endured

und wie mîn herze sî versniten

and how my heart be cut

nâch ir vil süezen minne.

after her very sweet love.

si hât sô reine sinne

she has so pure senses

und alsô ganze triuwe,

and so whole faithfulness,

daz ir mîn jâmer niuwe

that to-her my misery new

320

lît iemer an ir herzen,

lies ever on her heart,

bevindet si den smerzen,

(if)-perceives she the pain,

den ich durch si liden sol.

which I for her suffer shall.

dar umbe tuo sô rehte wol

there for do so right well

und erfülle mîn gebot.

and fulfill my command.

325

der reine und der vil süeze got,

the pure and the very sweet God,

der kein edel herze nie

who no noble heart ever

mit der helfe sin verlie,

with the help his forsook,

der ruoche sich erbarmen

he (may)-deign himself to-pity

über mich vil armen

over me very poor

330

und müeze der vil lieben geben

and may to-the very dear give

fröid' und ein wunneclichez leben,

joy' and a delightful life,

von der ich muoz hie ligen tôd.»

for whom I must here lie dead.»

mit dirre clagenden herzenôt

with this lamenting heart-distress

335 der ritter nam sîn ende.

the knight took his end.

dar umbe sîne hende

there for his hands

der kneht vil jæmerlichen want;

the servant very piteously wrung;

er hiez in snîden ûf zehant

he bade him cut open at-once

und erfulte im sîne bete.

and fulfilled to-him his request.

340 swaz er in ê gebeten hete,

whatever he him before asked had,

daz tet er und kêrte dan

that did he and turned thence

alse ein fröidelôser man

as a joyless man

mit dem herzen alsô têt.

with the heart so dead.

er fuorte ez, alse er ime gebôt,

he carried it, as he to-him bade,

345 zuo der selben veste,

to the same stronghold,

dâ er si ûfe weste,

where he her upon knew,

durch die der liebe herre sîn

for whom the dear lord his

leit des grimmen tôdes pin.

suffered the grim death's pain.

- Dô er zuo der veste kam,
When he to the stronghold came,
- dâ diu frouwe tugentsam 350
where the lady virtuous
- was inne bî der selben zît,
was within at the same time,
- dô reit im ûf den velde wît
then rode to-him upon the field wide
- ir man engegen von geschiht
her husband toward by chance
- und wolte, als uns daz mære giht,
and would, as to-us the tale says,
- dô lîhte hân gebeizet. 355
then perhaps have hawked.
- des wart der kneht gereizet
of-that was the servant provoked
- ûf clegelichen ungemach;
to lamentable discomfort;
- wan dô der ritter in gesach,
for when the knight him saw,
- dô gedâhte er alzehant:
then thought he at-once:
- «zwâre, dirre ist her gesant 360
«truly, this-one is hither sent
- umb' anders niht wan umbe daz
for' otherwise nothing except for that
- daz er mæres etewaz
that he of-tidings something
- bringe mînen wîbe
bring to-my woman
- von sînes herren libe,
of his lord's body,
- der nâch ir minne jâmer treit.» 365
who after her love misery bears.»

hie mite er zuo dem knehte reit
here with he to the servant rode

und wolte in mære frâgen sâ.
and would him tidings ask at-once.

dô ersach er schiere dâ
then saw he quickly there

die lade von gezierde kluoc,
the casket of ornament fine,

370 dar inn' er daz herze truoc
there in' he the heart bore

und der frouwen vingerlîn.
and the lady's ring.

er hætes' an den gürtel sîn
he had-them' on the girdle his

gehenket beidiu von geschiht,
hung both by chance,

als ob ez wær' anders iht.
as if it were' otherwise anything.

375 Dô der ritter daz ersach,
When the knight that saw,

den knappen gruozte er unde sprach,
the squire greeted he and spoke,

waz er dar inne trüege.
what he there within carried.

dô sprach der vil gefüege
then said the very well-bred

und der getriuwe jüngelinc:
and the faithful youth:

380 «herr', ez ist einer hande dinc,
«lord', it is of-one kind a-thing,

daz verre mit mir ist gesant.»
which far with me is sent.»

«lâ sehen», sprach er alzehant,
«let see», said he at-once,

«waz drinne sî verborren!»

«what therein be bidden!»

dô sprach der kneht mit sorgen:

then said the servant with cares:

«zwære des entuon ich niht,

«truly of-that do I not,

kein mensche niemer ez gesiht,

no person ever it sees,

wan der ez sol von rehte sehen.»

except he-who it shall by right see.»

«nein, alsus mac es niht geschehen»,

«no, thus can of-it not happen»,

sprach der ritter aber zuo ime,

said the knight again to him,

«wan ich dir'z mit gewalte nime,

«for I from-thee-it with force take,

und schouwe ez sunder dînen danc.»

and behold it without thy will.»

dar nâch was vil harte unlanc,

there after was very greatly not-long,

biz daz er ime daz ledelîn

until that he from-him the little-casket

brach von deme gürtel sîn.

broke from the girdle his.

daz tet er ûf mit sîner hant.

it did he open with his hand.

daz herze sach er unde vant

the heart saw he and found

dâ bî der frouwen vingerlîn,

there by the lady's ring,

an den zwein wart ime schîn,

in the two became to-him manifest,

385

390

395

daz der ritter læge tôt

that the knight lay dead

400 und disiu beidiu sîner nôt

and these both of-his distress

ein urkünde wæren

a testimony were

zuo der vil sældebæren.

to the very blessed.

The Heart at Table

III

The husband has his cook dress the heart as a special dish and sets it before his wife alone, since she cannot share it. She eats it, says she never tasted anything sweeter, and asks whether the meat was wild or tame; he answers both, and tells her whose heart it was. She swears she will taste nothing after it but death, folds her white hands until her heart splits, and pays back with constancy what her friend had lent her. Konrad closes: love is on sale now, and no noble heart should despair.

Der ritter sprach dem knehte zuo:

The knight said to-the servant to:

«ich sage dir, knappe, waz dû tuo:

«I tell to-thee, squire, what thou do:

405 var dîne strâze, wellest dû,

fare thy road, wouldst thou,

ich wil daz cleincete nû

I will the jewel now

mir selben hân, daz sage ich dir.»

for-me self have, that say I to-thee.»

sus reit er heim nâch sîner gir

thus rode he home after his desire

und sprach zuo sînem koche sâ,

and said to his cook at-once,

daz er im ûz dem herzen dâ
that he for-him out-of the heart there

410

eine sunder trahte
a special dish

mit hôhen flize mahte.
with high care should-make.

daz tet der koch mit willen gar;
that did the cook with will wholly;

er nam zuo ime daz herze dar
he took to him the heart there

und mahte ez alsô rehte wol,
and made it so right well,

415

daz man enbizen niemer sol
that one taste never shall

dekeiner slahte spîse,
of-any kind-of food,

diu sô wol nâch prîse
which so well after excellence

mit edelen wûrzen sî gemaht
with noble spices be made

sô daz herze vil geslaht.
as the heart very well-born.

420

Als ez wart gar bereitet,
When it was wholly prepared,

dô wart niht mê gebeitet;
then was not more waited;

der wirt gienc ezzen über tisch
the host went to-eat over table

und hiez tragen alsô frisch
and bade carry so fresh

die trahte sînen wîbe dar.
the dish to-his woman thither.

425

«frouwe», sprach er suoze gar,
«lady», said he sweetly wholly,

«diz ist ein spîse cleine,

«this is a food small,

die solt dû ezzen eine,

it shalt thou eat alone,

wan dû ir niht geteilen maht.»

for thou of-it not share mayst.»

430 sus nam diu frouwe vil geslaht

thus took the lady very well-born

und az ir friundes herze gar,

and ate her friend's heart wholly,

alsô daz si niht wart gewar,

so that she not became aware,

welher slahte ez möhte sîn.

of-what kind it might be.

daz jâmerliche trehtelin

the piteous little-dish

435 sô süeze dûhte ir werden munt,

so sweet seemed to-her worthy mouth,

daz si dâ vor ze keiner stunt

that she there before at no hour

nie dekeine spîse gaz,

ever any food ate,

der smac ir ie gevele baz.

whose taste to-her ever pleased better.

Dô diu frouwe stæte

When the lady constant

440 daz herze gezzen hæte,

the heart eaten had,

dô sprach der ritter alzehant:

then said the knight at-once:

«frouwe, nû tuo mir bekant,

«lady, now make to-me known,

wie disiu trahte dir behage.

how this dish to-thee pleases.

ich wæne, daz dû dîne tage

I think, that thou thy days

enbizzest keiner spîse nie

tasted no food ever

süezer, frouwe, danne die.»

sweeter, lady, than that.»

«lieber herre», sprach si dô,

«dear lord», said she then,

«niemer werde ich rehte frô,

«never may-become I rightly glad,

ob ich ie spîse gæze,

if I ever food ate,

diu sô zuckermæze

which so sugar-sweet

mich dûhte und alsô reine,

to-me seemed and so pure,

sô disiu trahte cleine,

as this dish small,

der ich iezuo hân bekort.

of-which I just-now have tasted.

aller spîse ein überhort

of-all food a surpassing-treasure

muoz si mir benamen sîn.

must it to-me indeed be.

sprechent, lieber herre mîn,

say, dear lord my,

ist diz ezzen lobesam

has this food praiseworthy

gewesen wild' oder zam?»

been wild' or tame?»

445

450

455

«Frouwe», sprach er aber zuo ir,
«Lady», said he again to her,

460 «vernim vil rehte, waz ich dir
«hear very rightly, what I to-thee

mit worten hie bescheide:
with words here declare:

zam und wilde beide
tame and wild both

was disiu trahte, sam mir got!
was this dish, so(-help) me God!

den fröiden wilde sunder spot,
to-the joys wild without mockery,

465 den sorgen zam ân' underlâz.
to-the cares tame without' ceasing.

dû hâst des ritters herze gâz,
thou hast the knight's heart eaten,

daz er in sîme lîbe truoc,
which he in his body bore,

der nâch dir hât erliten gnuoc
who after thee has endured enough

jâmers alle sîne tage.
of-misery all his days.

470 geloube mir, waz ich dir sage,
believe me, what I to-thee say,

er ist von sender herzenôt

he is from pining heart-distress

nâch dîner sûezen minne tô

after thy sweet love dead

und hât dir daz herze sîn

and has to-thee the heart his

und daz guote vingerlîn

and the good ring

zuo eim' urkûnde her gesant

as a' testimony hither sent

mit sîme knehte in disiu lant.»

with his servant into these lands.»

Von deme leiden mære

From the grievous tidings

wart diu sældenbære

became the blessed

alse ein tôtez wîp gestalt,

as a dead woman fashioned,

ir wart in deme lîbe kalt

to-her became in the body cold

daz herze, daz geloubent mir.

the heart, that believe me.

ir blanken hende enphielen ir

her white hands fell to-her

beide für sich in die schôz.

both before herself into the lap.

daz bluot ir ûz dem munde gôz,

the blood to-her out-of the mouth poured,

als ir diu wære schult gebôt.

as to-her the true debt bade.

«jâ», sprach si dô mit maneger nô,

«yes», said she then with much distress,

«hân ich sîn herze danne gâz,

«have I his heart then eaten,

475

480

485

der mir hât ân' underlâz

who to-me has without' ceasing

von grunde ie holden muot getragen,

from (the-)bottom ever loving spirit borne,

490 sô wil ich iu bînamen sagen,

so will I to-you indeed say,

daz ich nâch dirre spîse hêr

that I after this food lordly

deheiner trahte niemer mêr

of-no dish ever more

mich fûrbaz wil genieten.

myself henceforth will partake.

got sol mir verbieten

God shall to-me forbid

495 durch sînen tugentlichen muot,

by his virtuous spirit,

daz nâch sô werder spîse guot

that after so worthy food good

in mich kein swachiu trahte gê.

into me any mean dish go.

enbîzen sol ich niemer mê

taste shall I never more

dekeiner slahte dinges,

of-any kind-of thing,

500 wan des ungelinges,

except of-the misfortune,

der geheizen ist der tôt.

which called is the death.

ich sol mit sender herzenôt

I shall with pining heart-distress

verswenden hie mîn armez leben

waste bere my poor life

umb' in, der durch mich hât gegeben

for' him, who for me has given

beide leben unde lîp.

both life and body.

505

ich wære ein triuwelôsez wîp,

I were a faithless woman,

ob ich gedæhte niht dar an,

if I thought not there on,

daz er vil tugentlicher man

that he very virtuous man

sante mir sîn herze tô.

sent to-me his heart dead.

wê, daz mir ie nâch sîner nô

woe, that to-me ever after his distress

510

wart einen tac daz leben schîn!

was one day the life manifest!

zwâr', ez enmac niht langer sîn,

truly, it can no longer be,

daz ich âne in eine lebe,

that I without him alone live,

unde er in dem tôde swebe,

and he in the death hover,

der vor mir triuwe nie verbarc.»

who before me faithfulness never hid.»

515

sus wart ir nôt sô rehte starc,

thus became her distress so right strong,

daz si von herzenleide

that she from heart-sorrow

ir blanken hende beide

her white hands both

mit grimme zuo ein ander vielt;

with fury to one another folded;

520 daz herze ir in dem lîbe spielt

the heart to-her in the body split

von sender jâmerunge.

from pining lamentation.

hie mite gap diu junge

here with gave the young-one

ein ende ir süezen lebene

an end to-her sweet life

und widerwac vil ebene

and counterweighed very evenly

525 mit eime swæren lôte,

with a heavy weight,

swaz ir dâ vor genôte

whatever to-her there before urgently

ir friunt geborget hæte.

her friend lent bad.

si galt mit ganzer stæte

she paid with whole constancy

und ouch mit hôhen triuwen ime.

and also with high faithfulness to-him.

530 got welle, swaz ich dinges nime,

God grant, whatever I of-thing take,

daz ich widergeben daz

that I repay that

müeze senfter unde baz

may more-gently and better

denn' ir vil reinez herze tete.

than' her very pure heart did.

ich wæne daz an keiner stete

I think that in no place

wart nie vergolten alsô gar

was ever repaid so wholly

noch niemer wirt: des nim ich war

nor ever is: of-that take I heed

an den liuten die nû sint;

in the people who now are;

wan in froun Minnen underbint

for to-them lady Love's binding

lît niht sô strengelichen an

lies not so strictly on

daz beidiu frouwen unde man

that both ladies and men

zesamene gebunden sîn,

together bound are,

daz si des grimmen tôdes pîn

that they the grim death's pain

nû durch einander lîden.

now for one-another suffer.

man slîzet ab der wîden

one strips off the withe

ein bast vil sterker mit der hant

a bast much stronger with the hand

denn' iezuo sî der minne bant

than' now be the love's bond

dâ nû liep bî liebe lît.

where now dear by dear lies.

535

540

545

âne grimmes tôdes strît

without grim death's strife

werdent si gescheiden wol

become they parted well

550 die nû kumberliche dol

who now wretched suffering

durch einander wellent tragen.

for one-another will bear.

frou Minne gît bî disen tagen

lady Love gives in these days

in selber alsô guoten kouf.

to-them self so good a-bargain.

wîlen dô si niender slouf

formerly when she nowhere slipped

555 ze tugentlôser diete

to virtueless folk

umb' alsô swache miete,

for' so mean a-bire,

dô dûhte ir sûezekeit sô guot,

then seemed her sweetness so good,

daz durch si manic edel muot

that for her many-a noble spirit

biz ûf den tôt versêret wart.

until upon the death wounded was.

560 nû verkêret sich ir art

now changes itself her nature

und ist sô kranc ir orden,

and is so weak her order,

daz si wol veile ist worden

that she quite for-sale is become

den argen umbe ein kleinez guot.

to-the base for a small gain.

dar umbe lützel iemen tuot

there for scarcely anyone does

durch si nû deme lîbe wê.

for her now to-the body woe.

man wil dar ûf niht ahten mê

one will there on not heed more

und rüemet daz vil kleine

and praises that very little

daz sich tuot algemeine.

which itself does commonly.

als ist ez umb' die minne.

so is it about' the love.

gewünne si die sinne

should-win she the wits

daz si noch tiurre würde,

that she yet dearer would-become,

ez wære jâmers bürde

there would-have of-misery burden

nie geleet vaster an

never laid harder on

denn' iezuo frouwen unde man:

than' now to-ladies and men:

ez würde nâch ir sô gestriten

there would after her so be-fought

und ein ander für geriten

and one another before ridden

daz man ez gerne möhte sehen.

that one it gladly might see.

niht anders kan ich iu verjehen,

nothing else can I to-you declare,

von Wirzeburc ich Kuonrât.

of Würzburg I Konrad.

565

570

575

580 swer alsô reine sinne hât

whoever so pure senses has

daz er daz beste gerne tuot,

that he the best gladly does,

der sol diz mære in sînen muot

he shall this tale into his spirit

dar umbe setzen gerne

there for set gladly

daz er dâ bî gelerne

that he there by may-learn

585 die minne lûterlichen tragen.

the love purely to-bear.

kein edel herze sol verzagen. * * *

no noble heart shall despair. (lacuna)